SECOND EDITION

face2face

Starter Student's Book

Download audio

Chris Redston with Gillie Cunningham

CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS

Contents

Lesson			Vocabulary	Grammar	Real World
1A	What's your name?	p6	numbers 0–12	*I*, *my*, *you*, *your*	saying hello; introducing people; phone numbers; saying goodbye
1B	Where's she from?	p8	countries	*he*, *his*, *she*, *her*	*Where are you from?*
1C	In class	p10	the alphabet; things in your bag (1); *a* and *an*		first names and surnames; classroom language
1D	People and things	p12	people; things; plurals		
Extra Practice 1 and Progress Portfolio 1		p97			
2A	She's British	p14	nationalities	*be* (singular): positive and negative	
2B	What's your job?	p16	jobs	*be* (singular): questions and short answers	
2C	Personal information	p18	titles; greetings		email addresses; personal information questions
2D	How old is she?	p20	numbers 13–100		*How old … ?*
Extra Practice 2 and Progress Portfolio 2		p98			
3A	Two cities	p22	adjectives (1); word order with adjectives; *very*	*be* (plural): positive, negative, questions and short answers	
3B	Brothers and sisters	p24	family	possessive *'s*; subject pronouns (*I*, *you*, etc.) and possessive adjectives (*my*, *your*, etc.)	
3C	Eat in or take away?	p26	food and drink (1)		money and prices; *How much … ?*; in a café
3D	Food I like	p28	food and drink (2); *love*, *like*, *eat*, *drink*, *a lot of*		
Extra Practice 3 and Progress Portfolio 3		p99			
4A	Live, work and study	p30	phrases with *like*, *have*, *live*, *work*, *study*	Present Simple (*I*, *you*, *we*, *they*): positive and negative	
4B	My free time	p32	free time activities	Present Simple (*I*, *you*, *we*, *they*): questions and short answers	
4C	Buying things	p34	things to buy; *this*, *that*, *these*, *those*		in a shop
4D	What time is it?	p36	days of the week; time words		telling the time; talking about the time
Extra Practice 4 and Progress Portfolio 4		p100			
5A	A typical day	p38	daily routines	Present Simple (*he*, *she*, *it*): positive and negative	
5B	Where does she work?	p40	time phrases with *on*, *in*, *at*	Present Simple (*he*, *she*, *it*): questions and short answers	
5C	An evening out	p42	food and drink (3)		in a restaurant
5D	A day off	p44	frequency adverbs and phrases with *every*		
Extra Practice 5 and Progress Portfolio 5		p101			

VIDEO See Teacher's DVD

Speaking	Listening and Video	Reading	Writing
Names Introducing people Phone numbers	Conversations at a party Phone numbers	Conversations at a party	
Names and countries What's his / her name? Where's he / she from?	**Help with Listening** Word stress Where are you from?		Sentences about people from different countries
First names and surnames Conversations in class	VIDEO Welcome to the class (1) and (2) VIDEO Classroom language	Conversations in class	
Talking about a photo What's in my bag?	What's in your bag?		
HELP WITH PRONUNCIATION /æ/ **and** /ə/ p13		**Reading and Writing Portfolio 1** **Where are you from?** Workbook p52	
True or false?	Around the world	True and false sentences	True and false sentences
About your partner Tina's friends Six people	Photos of friends		*yes* / *no* questions
Good morning! Personal information	VIDEO The City Gym	Email addresses	Filling in a form
Questions with *How old ... ?* Guess the ages	**Help with Listening** Numbers with *-teen* and *-ty* Five conversations		
HELP WITH PRONUNCIATION /ɪ/ **and** /iː/ p21		**Reading and Writing Portfolio 2** **Three people** Workbook p54	
Talking about two emails	**Help with Listening** Contractions	Two emails	
Your family	The Cooper family Our grandchildren	The Cooper family	Sentences about the Cooper family
Ordering food and drink in a café	VIDEO In a café	A price list in a café	
Food and drink	Fiona's family Food and drink I like	Food and drink I like	Sentences with *love*, *like*, *eat*, *drink*, *a lot of*
HELP WITH PRONUNCIATION /ɒ/ **and** /ʌ/ p29		**Reading and Writing Portfolio 3** **See you soon!** Workbook p56	
True or false?	Life in Mexico Life in the USA	Life in Mexico Life in the USA	True and false sentences
Your free time Your partner's free time	An online interview **Help with Listening** Questions with *do you*	An online interview	Your free time *yes* / *no* questions
Buying things in a shop	VIDEO In a shop		A conversation in a shop
Film times	Days and times	Days and times	
HELP WITH PRONUNCIATION /θ/ **and** /ð/ p37		**Reading and Writing Portfolio 4** **Internet profiles** Workbook p58	
Your daily routine Your partner's daily routine	Carol's routine Tom's routine	Carol's routine Tom's routine	
Nadine's routine Your best friend	Lunch on Monday **Help with Listening** Sentence stress (1)		Questions with *does*
Ordering food and drink in a restaurant	VIDEO In a restaurant	A restaurant menu	A conversation in a restaurant
Your Sunday routine	Our Sunday routines I love Sundays **Help with Listening** Sentence stress (2)	Our Sunday routines	True and false sentences
HELP WITH PRONUNCIATION /w/ **and** /v/ p45		**Reading and Writing Portfolio 5** **My best friend** Workbook p60	

Lesson			Vocabulary	Grammar	Real World
6A	My home town	p46	places in a town or city (1)	*a*, *some*, *a lot of*; *there is* / *there are*: positive	
6B	Are there any shops?	p48	places in a town or city (2)	*there is* / *there are*: negative, *yes* / *no* questions and short answers; *any*	
6C	Tourist information	p50	things in your bag (2)		at the tourist information centre
6D	It's my favourite	p52	clothes, colours, *favourite*		
Extra Practice 6 and Progress Portfolio 6 p102					
7A	We're twins	p54	things you like and don't like; *love*, *like*, *don't like*, *hate*	object pronouns	
7B	Can you drive?	p56	abilities	*can* for ability	
7C	Directions	p58	prepositions of place		asking for and giving directions
7D	The internet	p60	things people do online		
Extra Practice 7 and Progress Portfolio 7 p103					
8A	I was there	p62	adjectives (2)	Past Simple of *be*: positive and negative	
8B	Happy anniversary!	p64	years and past time phrases	Past Simple of *be*: questions and short answers; *was born* / *were born*	
8C	Birthdays	p66	months and dates		talking about days and dates; making suggestions
8D	Life's a party!	p68	big numbers		
Extra Practice 8 and Progress Portfolio 8 p104					
9A	Amazing journeys	p70	transport	Past Simple: positive (regular and irregular verbs)	
9B	My last holiday	p72	holiday activities	Past Simple: negative, questions and short answers	
9C	A weekend away	p74	at the station		buying train tickets; asking about last weekend
9D	Who, what, when?	p76	question words		
Extra Practice 9 and Progress Portfolio 9 p105					
10A	Life changes	p78	future plans; future time phrases	*be going to*: positive and negative	
10B	A new start	p80	phrases with *have*, *watch*, *go*, *go to*	*be going to*: questions and short answers	
10C	Good luck!	p82	adjectives (3): feelings		saying goodbye and good luck
	End of Course Review	p85			
Extra Practice 10 and Progress Portfolio 10 p106					

Pair and Group Work p86 Audio and Video Scripts p107 Language Summaries p114

VIDEO See Teacher's DVD

Speaking	Listening and Video	Reading	Writing
A town or city you know	Susan's home town	Susan's home town	Sentences with *there is* / *there are*
Places near Susan's flat Places near your home	Welcome to my home **Help with Listening** Linking (1)		Questions with *Is there a … ?* and *Are there any … ?*
Asking for information at a tourist information centre	VIDEO At a tourist information centre	Two conversations	A conversation at a tourist information centre
Your clothes and colours Favourite things and people	My clothes	My favourite places	Questions with *your favourite*
HELP WITH PRONUNCIATION /tʃ/ **and** /dʒ/ p53		**Reading and Writing Portfolio 6** **A tourist in London** Workbook p62	
Things you love, like, don't like and hate	We're very different	We're very different	Questions with *Does … like … ?* Questions with *Do you like … ?*
Things you and your family can and can't do	Help with the children **Help with Listening** *can* or *can't*		True or false sentences with *can* or *can't* Questions with *can*
Asking for and giving directions	VIDEO Directions	Conversations in the street	
Things you and your partner do online	An internet questionnaire	It's my internet!	
HELP WITH PRONUNCIATION /s/ **and** /ʃ/ p61		**Reading and Writing Portfolio 7** **The same or different?** Workbook p64	
When I was ten	Three amazing days	Three amazing days	Sentences with *was* and *were*
When was she born? Your last wedding or party	An Indian wedding		
When's your birthday? Making suggestions	Dates VIDEO Happy birthday!		A conversation about next Saturday
Festivals in my town, city or country	Fantastic festivals Two festivals **Help with Listening** Linking (2)	Fantastic festivals	
HELP WITH PRONUNCIATION /ɔː/ **and** /ɜː/ p69		**Reading and Writing Portfolio 8** **Going out** Workbook p66	
How you travel around The last time you visited a different town or city	**Help with Listening** Present Simple or Past Simple	Let's go by tuk-tuk! Around the world by bike	Sentences in the Past Simple
Things Heidi and Charlie did on holiday Your last holiday	Three holidays	Three holidays	Things you do on holiday Past Simple questions
Buying train tickets What you did last weekend	VIDEO At the station VIDEO Last weekend		Things you did last weekend
Questions about you and your partner	How many did I get right? **Help with Listening** Sentence stress (3)	A quiz	*Wh-* questions
HELP WITH PRONUNCIATION /l/ **and** /r/ p77		**Reading and Writing Portfolio 9** **On holiday** Workbook p68	
Your future plans	Four students' plans	Four English students' plans	Sentences with *be going to*
Questions with *be going to* Students' future plans	Rosie's future plans		Questions with *be going to*
Saying goodbye and good luck	VIDEO See you soon!	See you soon! Two conversations	
HELP WITH PRONUNCIATION **Vowel sounds: review** p84		**Reading and Writing Portfolio 10** **Happy birthday!** Workbook p70	

Phonemic Symbols p134 **Classroom Instructions** p135

1A What's your name?

Vocabulary numbers 0–12
Grammar *I, my, you, your*
Real World saying hello; introducing people; phone numbers; saying goodbye

Hello!

1 **a** CD1 ▸ 1 Look at the photo. Read and listen to conversation 1.

b PRONUNCIATION Listen again and practise.

c Practise conversation 1 with four students. Use your name.

d Tell the class your name.

Hello, I'm Francesca.

Hello, my name's Lee.

Hi, I'm Youssef.

2 **a** CD1 ▸ 2 Read and listen to conversation 2.

b PRONUNCIATION Listen again and practise.

c Practise conversation 2 with four students. Use your name.

HELP WITH GRAMMAR

I, my, you, your

3 **a** Fill in the gaps with *I* or *my*.

1 Hello, *I* 'm Stefan.
2 _____'m fine, thanks.
3 _____ name's Emel.

b Fill in the gaps with *you* or *your*.

1 How are *you* ?
2 Nice to meet _____ .
3 _____ too.
4 What's _____ name?

GRAMMAR 1.1 ▸ p115

4 CD1 ▸ 3 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the sentences in **3**.

5 **a** Fill in the gaps with *I*, *my*, *you* or *your*.

A

SUE Hello, *my* name's Sue.
What's _____ name?
MARIO Hello, _____'m Mario.
SUE Nice to meet _____ .
MARIO _____ too.

B

ADAM Hi, Meg.
MEG Hi, Adam. How are _____ ?
ADAM _____'m fine, thanks.
And _____ ?
MEG _____'m OK, thanks.

b CD1 ▸ 4 Listen and check.

c Work in pairs. Practise the conversations in **5a**.

Introducing people

6 **a** CD1 ▸ 5 Read and listen to conversation 3.

b PRONUNCIATION Listen again and practise.

c Work in groups. Practise conversation 3. Use your names.



1
STEFAN Hello, I'm Stefan.
What's your name?
EMEL Hello, my name's Emel.
STEFAN Nice to meet you.
EMEL You too.

2
TIM Hi, Anita.
ANITA Hi, Tim. How are you?
TIM I'm fine, thanks. And you?
ANITA I'm OK, thanks.

Numbers 0–12

7 **a** CD1 6 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise these numbers.

0 zero	7 seven
1 one	8 eight
2 two	9 nine
3 three	10 ten
4 four	11 eleven
5 five	12 twelve
6 six	

b Work in pairs. Say four numbers. Write your partner's numbers. Are they correct?

Phone numbers

8 **a** CD1 7 PRONUNCIATION Read and listen to these questions and answers. Listen again and practise.



What's your mobile number?

It's 07954 544768.

What's your home number?

It's 020 7622 3479.

TIP • In phone numbers 0 = *oh* and 44 = *double four*.

b Work in pairs. Practise the questions and answers in **8a**.

9 **a** CD1 8 Listen to three conversations. Write the phone numbers.

b Work in pairs. Compare answers.



3
NINA Polly, this is David.
POLLY Hello, David. Nice to meet you.
DAVID You too.

4
LUCY Goodbye, Miki.
MIKI Bye, Lucy. See you soon.
LUCY Yes, see you.

Get ready … Get it right!

10 Work in pairs. Student A p86. Student B p91.

Goodbye!

11 **a** CD1 9 Read and listen to conversation 4.

b PRONUNCIATION Listen again and practise.

c Say goodbye to other students.

1B Where's she from?

Vocabulary countries
Grammar *he, his, she, her*
Real World *Where are you from?*

QUICK REVIEW Phone numbers Write two phone numbers. Work in pairs. Say your phone numbers. Write your partner's numbers. Are they correct?

Countries

1 Look at the map. Match these countries to 1–12.

Italy 7 Brazil ☐ Russia ☐ the USA ☐
Germany ☐ Egypt ☐ Australia ☐ Mexico ☐
Turkey ☐ the UK ☐ China ☐ Spain ☐

HELP WITH LISTENING Word stress

2 CD1 10 Listen and notice the word stress (•) in the countries in **1**.

Italy *Brazil*

3 CD1 10 PRONUNCIATION Listen again and practise.

4 Work in pairs. Look again at the map. Say a number. Your partner says the country.

What's number 2? Mexico.

Where are you from?

5 **a** CD1 11 Look at the photo of Stefan and Emel. Listen to the conversation and fill in the gaps.

b CD1 12 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise.

c Where are you from? Tell the class.

I'm from Peru. I'm from Libya.
I'm from Indonesia. I'm from Prague.

d Work in groups. Ask other students where they are from.





What's his name?

6 **a** Look again at the photo of Stefan and Emel. Match questions 1–4 to answers a–d.

1	What's his name?	a	He's from Russia.
2	Where's he from?	b	His name's Stefan.
3	What's her name?	c	She's from Turkey.
4	Where's she from?	d	Her name's Emel.

b CD1 13 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise.

HELP WITH GRAMMAR *he, his, she, her*

7 **a** Fill in the gaps with *he* or *his*.

1 What's *his* name?
2 _____ name's Stefan.
3 Where's _____ from?
4 _____'s from Russia.

b Fill in the gaps with *she* or *her*.

1 What's *her* name?
2 _____ name's Emel.
3 Where's _____ from?
4 _____'s from Turkey.

GRAMMAR 1.2 p115

8 **a** Work in pairs. Look at A–F. Write sentences about the people. Use these countries.

~~France~~ Poland Colombia India Thailand Japan

A His name's Marcel and he's from France.

b CD1 14 Listen and check your answers.

Get ready … Get it right!

9 Work in pairs. Student A p87. Student B p92.



1C REAL WORLD In class



Vocabulary the alphabet; things in your bag (1); *a* and *an*
Real World first names and surnames; classroom language

QUICK REVIEW What's his / her name? Work in pairs. Ask the names of students in your class:
A *What's his name?* B *His name's Marcus.*
A *What's her name?* B *Her name's Ana.*

The alphabet

1 CD1 15 PRONUNCIATION Listen and say the alphabet. Notice the **vowels** and the **consonants**.

Aa Bb Cc Dd Ee Ff Gg
Hh Ii Jj Kk Ll Mm Nn
Oo Pp Qq Rr Ss Tt Uu
Vv Ww Xx Yy Zz

2 CD1 16 Listen and write the letters.

What's your first name?

3 **a** Look at photo A. Then match the teacher's questions 1–3 to the student's answers a–c.

1	What's your first name, please?	a	Ortega.
2	What's your surname?	b	O–r–t–e–g–a.
3	How do you spell that?	c	It's Pablo.

b VIDEO 1.1 CD1 17 Watch or listen. Check your answers.

A



4 **a** VIDEO 1.2 CD1 18 Watch or listen to the teacher talk to two more students. Write their names.

1 D_____ K_____
2 _____ _____

b Work in pairs. Compare answers.

5 **a** CD1 19 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the questions in **3a**.

first name → What's your first name, please?

b Ask three students the questions in **3a**. Write their first names and surnames.

What's your first name? It's Bianca.

Things in your bag (1)

B



6 **a** Work in pairs. Look at photo B. Match these words to things 1–9.

a bag 1 a dictionary ☐ an apple ☐
a pen ☐ a pencil ☐ a book ☐
a notebook ☐ an umbrella ☐ a mobile ☐

b CD1 20 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise.

7 Work in pairs. Look again at photo B. Say a number. Your partner says the thing.

What's number 1? A bag.

HELP WITH VOCABULARY
a and *an*

8 Look at the words in **6a**. Then fill in the gaps in these rules with *a* or *an*.

- We use _____ with nouns that begin with a **consonant** sound.
- We use _____ with nouns that begin with a **vowel** sound.

VOCABULARY 1.5 p114

9 Fill in the gaps with *a* or *an*.

1 *a* country
2 _____ number
3 _____ English dictionary
4 _____ student
5 _____ answer
6 _____ phone number
7 _____ Italian bag

Excuse me!

10 VIDEO 1.3 CD1 21 Look at photo C. Watch or listen to three conversations in class. Match students 1–3 to the words they ask about a–c.

1 Dorota	a Brazil
2 Pablo	b answer
3 Khalid	c pencil

REAL WORLD Classroom language

11 VIDEO 1.3 CD1 21 Watch or listen again. Tick (✓) these sentences when you hear them.

- Excuse me.
- What does *answer* mean?
- I'm sorry, I don't understand.
- What's this in English?
- Can you repeat that, please?
- I'm sorry, I don't know.
- How do you spell *Brazil*?

REAL WORLD 1.7 p115

12 CD1 22 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the sentences in **11**.



13 **a** Fill in the gaps with these words.

~~Excuse~~ sorry mean spell repeat What's understand know

A
PABLO [1] *Excuse* me. What does *notebook* [2] _____ ?
SALLY Look. This is a notebook.

B
SALLY Do exercise 4 on page 10.
DOROTA I'm sorry, I don't [3] _____ . Can you [4] _____ that, please?
SALLY Do exercise 4 on page 10.

C
SALLY What's the answer to question 2?
KHALID I'm [5] _____ , I don't [6] _____ .

D
PABLO [7] _____ this in English?
SALLY It's an umbrella.
PABLO How do you [8] _____ that?
SALLY U–m–b–r–e–double l–a.

b Work in pairs. Practise the conversations. Take turns to be the teacher.

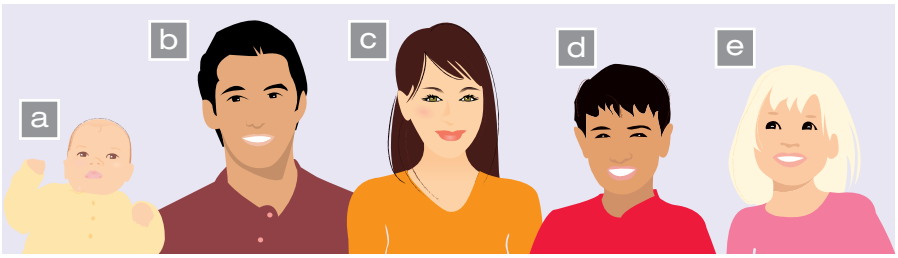
1D VOCABULARY AND SKILLS People and things

Vocabulary people; things; plurals
Skills Listening: What's in your bag?

QUICK REVIEW The alphabet Write five English words. Work in pairs. Spell your words to your partner. Write your partner's words. Is your spelling correct?

1 **a** Look at the picture. Match these words to people a–e.

a baby *a* a boy ☐ a girl ☐ a man ☐ a woman ☐



b CD1 23 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise.

2 **a** Look at the photo. Match these words to things 1–7.

a diary *4* a chair ☐ a table ☐ a computer ☐
a camera ☐ a watch ☐ a sandwich ☐

b CD1 24 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise.

c Work in pairs. What other things are in the photo?



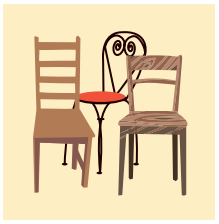
3 **a** Look at the photo for one minute. Close your book. Write all the things in the photo you can remember.

b Work in pairs. Compare answers and check your partner's spelling. Who has more words?

HELP WITH VOCABULARY
Plurals

4 Look at these words. Write the missing letters.





SINGULAR	PLURAL
	+ -s
a chair	chair**s**
a table	table**s**
a thing	thing_
a boy	boy_
	+ -es
a wat**ch**	watch**es**
a sandwi**ch**	sandwich_ _
	y → -ies
a diar**y**	dia**ries**
a baby	bab_ _ _
	irregular
a man	m**e**n
a woman	wom**e**n
a person	p**eo**ple

VOCABULARY 1.8 p114

5 CD1 25 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the plurals in 4.

6 Write the plurals.

1 a girl *girls*
2 a camera
3 a country
4 a watch
5 a man
6 a computer
7 a woman
8 an apple
9 a dictionary
10 a person

7 Work in pairs. Look at p96.

What's in your bag?

8 **a** CD1 26 Listen to three people in London. Tick (✓) the things in their bags.



A

books ✓
a dictionary
a computer
a notebook
pens
pencils
a mobile
a sandwich

B

a mobile
photos
a diary
a pen
books
an umbrella
an apple
sandwiches





C

a camera
a mobile
books
a watch
a notebook
pens
a pencil
an umbrella

b Work in pairs. Compare answers.

c Listen again. Check your answers. Where are the people from?

9 Work in groups. Say what's in your bag. Ask your teacher for new vocabulary. Who has the same things?

HELP WITH PRONUNCIATION /æ/ and /ə/

1 CD1 27 Look at the pictures. Listen to the sounds and words. Listen again and practise.

/æ/



bag

/ə/



computer

2 CD1 28 Listen to these words. Notice how we say the **pink** and **blue** letters. Listen again and practise.

/æ/	/ə/
bag man apple	computer woman
practise vocabulary	teacher Italy China
that Japan camera	Brazil Japan camera
understand alphabet	understand alphabet

3 **a** CD1 29 Listen to these sentences. Listen again and practise.

1 Is your camera from China?
2 Your apples are in my bag.
3 Practise the alphabet.
4 My computer is from Japan.
5 Is he from Italy or Brazil?
6 Is your teacher a man or a woman?

b Work in pairs. Practise the sentences.

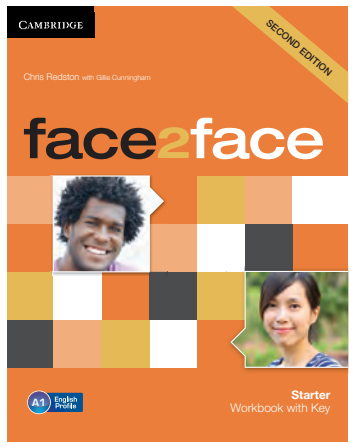
continue2learn

Vocabulary, Grammar and Real World

- **Extra Practice 1 and Progress Portfolio 1** p97
- **Language Summary 1** p114
- **1A–D** Workbook p3

Reading and Writing

- **Portfolio 1** Where are you from? Workbook p52
  Reading four conversations
  Writing full stops (.) and question marks (?); capital letters (1); about you



2A She's British

Vocabulary nationalities
Grammar *be* (singular): positive and negative

QUICK REVIEW Plurals Write five singular words (*a watch*, etc.). Work in pairs. Take turns to say your words. Say the plurals of your partner's words:
A *a watch* **B** *watches*.

Nationalities

1 **a** Write the missing vowels (*a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*) in these countries.

1	*I* t *a* l y	5	G _ rm _ n y	9	T _ rk _ y
2	B r _ z _ l	6	_ g y p t	10	the _ K
3	R _ ss _ _	7	_ _ s t r _ l _ _	11	S p _ _ n
4	the _ S _	8	M _ x _ c _	12	C h _ n _

b Match these nationalities to the countries in **1a**.

a	German *5*	e	American	i	British
b	Mexican	f	Spanish	j	Turkish
c	Italian	g	Egyptian	k	Chinese
d	Russian	h	Brazilian	l	Australian

2 **a** CD1 30 **PRONUNCIATION** Listen and practise the countries and nationalities.

Italy, Italian

b Work in pairs. Say a country. Your partner says the nationality.

Turkey — Turkish

c What's your nationality? Tell the class.

I'm Japanese. I'm French. I'm Colombian.

Around the world

3 **a** Work in pairs. Look at photos A–D. Fill in the gaps with a nationality from **1b**.

b CD1 31 Listen and check.

HELP WITH GRAMMAR *be* (singular): positive

4 Fill in the gaps with *'m*, *'re* or *'s*.

POSITIVE (+)

1	I____ British.	(= I am)
2	You____ a student.	(= you are)
3	He____ German.	(= he is)
4	She____ Brazilian.	(= she is)
5	It____ American.	(= it is)

GRAMMAR 2.1 p117

A



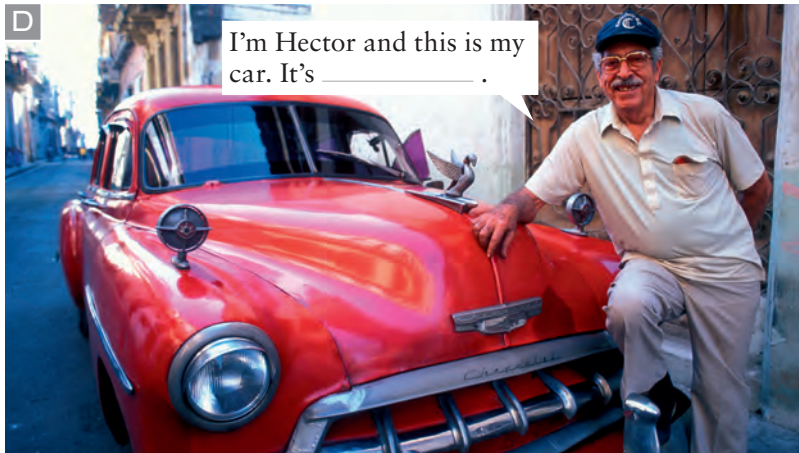
B



C



D



5 CD1 32 **PRONUNCIATION** Listen and practise the sentences in **4**.

I'm → I'm British.

6 **a** Fill in the gaps with *'m* or *'s*.

1 She___ from São Paulo and she___ a student.
2 I___ from London and I___ a teacher.
3 It isn't a Mercedes. It___ a Chevrolet.
4 She isn't Australian. She___ from the UK.
5 He isn't from Berlin. He___ from Hamburg.
6 I'm not American. I___ from Havana, in Cuba.

b Work in pairs. Compare answers. Then match the sentences to photos A–D.

HELP WITH GRAMMAR *be* (singular): negative

7 Look again at **6a**. Then fill in the gaps in these sentences with *'m not*, *aren't* or *isn't*.

NEGATIVE (–)

1 I_____ American. (= am not)
2 You _____ a teacher. (= are not)
3 He _____ from Berlin. (= is not)
4 She _____ Australian.
5 It _____ a Mercedes.

GRAMMAR 2.2 p117

8 CD1 33 **PRONUNCIATION** Listen and practise the sentences in **7**.

I'm not → I'm not American.

True or false?

9 **a** Check these words with your teacher.

the capital (city)	a singer	a company

b Work in pairs. Look at photos 1–10. Tick (✓) the true sentences. Make the other sentences negative. Write the correct sentences.

1 Madrid is the capital of Spain. ✓
2 Gisele Bündchen is German.
Gisele Bündchen isn't German. She's Brazilian.
3 Leonardo DiCaprio is Italian.
4 Nissan is a Chinese company.
5 The Eiffel Tower is in Paris.
6 The White House is in New York.
7 Prince William is Russian.
8 Beyoncé is an American singer.
9 Fiat is a French company.
10 Beijing is the capital of China.

c Check on p134. Are your answers correct?

Get ready … Get it right!

10 Work in new pairs. Write three true sentences and three false sentences.

Bill Gates is American.
BMW is a British company.

11 **a** Work in groups of four. Read your sentences to the other pair. Are the other pair's sentences true or false?

Bill Gates is American. | I think that's true / false. | Yes, you're right. / No, you're wrong.

b Tell the class two of your true sentences.



2B What's your job?

Vocabulary jobs
Grammar *be* (singular): questions and short answers

QUICK REVIEW Countries and nationalities Work in pairs. Take turns to say a country. Your partner says the nationality and a person or thing of that nationality: **A** *The UK.* **B** *British. Prince William is British.*



Jobs

1 **a** Work in pairs. Match these jobs to pictures a–i.

a manager *b* | a doctor ☐ | a teacher ☐
a sales assistant ☐ | an actor / an actress ☐
a waiter / a waitress ☐ | a taxi driver ☐
a musician ☐ | a police officer ☐

TIP • In these vocabulary boxes we only show the main stress (•) in words and phrases.

b CD1 34 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise.

c Work in new pairs. Ask questions about the people in pictures a–i.

What's his job? — He's a police officer.
What's her job? — She's a doctor.

Photos of friends

2 **a** Check these words with your teacher.

a friend | beautiful | married | single

b CD1 35 Look at the photo of Tina and Matt. Listen and match these names to photos 1–4 on Tina's computer.

Sofia ☐ Marco ☐ Emma ☐ Gary ☐

c Listen again. Complete the table.

	Gary	Marco	Emma	Sofia
country	*Australia*			
job	*a doctor*			

HELP WITH GRAMMAR

be (singular): *Wh-* questions

3 Fill in the gaps with *am*, *are* or *'s*.

WH- QUESTIONS (?)

1 Where _____ I?
2 Where _____ you from?
3 Where_____ he / she / it from?
4 What_____ your name?
5 What_____ his / her name?
6 What_____ your job?
7 What_____ his / her job?

GRAMMAR 2.3 p117

4 **a** CD1 36 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the questions in **3**.

b Cover the table in **2c**. Work in pairs. Then take turns to ask and answer questions about the people in photos 1–4.

What's his name? — Gary.
Where's he from? — Australia.
What's his job? — He's a doctor.



Is he a musician?

5 **a** Look again at the table in **2c**. Tick (✓) the correct answers.

1	Is Gary a musician?	a	Yes, he is.	b	No, he isn't. ✓
2	Is Marco from Mexico?	a	Yes, he is.	b	No, he isn't.
3	Is Emma an actress?	a	Yes, she is.	b	No, she isn't.
4	Is Sofia Italian?	a	Yes, she is.	b	No, she isn't.
5	Are you from Russia?	a	Yes, I am.	b	No, I'm not.
6	Is your watch Japanese?	a	Yes, it is.	b	No, it isn't.

b Work in pairs. Compare answers.

HELP WITH GRAMMAR

be (singular): *yes* / *no* questions and short answers

6 Fill in the gaps with *am*, *are*, *aren't*, *is* or *isn't*.

YES / *NO* QUESTIONS (?)	SHORT ANSWERS
Am I in this class?	Yes, you are. / No, you _____ .
_____ you from Russia?	Yes, I _____ . / No, I'm not.
_____ he a doctor?	Yes, he is. / No, he _____ .
_____ she Italian?	Yes, she _____ . / No, she isn't.
_____ it Japanese?	Yes, it _____ . / No, it _____ .

GRAMMAR 2.4 ▸ p117

7 CD1 ▸ 37 **PRONUNCIATION** Listen and practise the questions and short answers in **6**.

8 **a** Fill in the gaps with *Is* or *Are*.

1 *Are* you a student?
2 _____ your teacher from the UK?
3 _____ you Spanish?
4 _____ you married?
5 _____ your mobile in your bag?
6 _____ you a doctor?
7 _____ Beyoncé a singer?
8 _____ Leonardo DiCaprio a musician?

b Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions. Use the correct short answers.

Are you a student? Yes, I am.

Get ready … Get it right!

9 Work in new pairs. Student A p87. Student B p92.

2C REAL WORLD Personal information

Vocabulary titles; greetings
Real World email addresses; personal information questions

QUICK REVIEW Jobs Write four jobs. Work in pairs. Take turns to mime your jobs to your partner. Guess your partner's jobs: **A** *You're a taxi driver.* **B** *Yes, that's right.*

Good morning!

1 **a** Match 1–3 to a–c.

1	**Mr** (Brown)	a	a married woman
2	**Mrs** or **Ms** (King)	b	a single woman
3	**Ms** or **Miss** (Roberts)	c	a man (married or single)

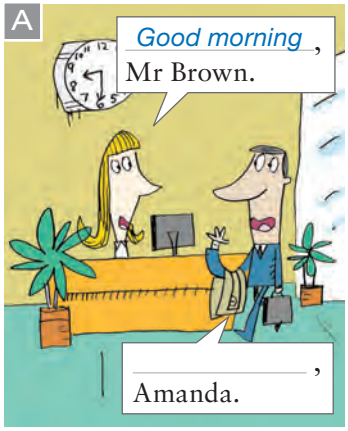
b CD1 ▸ 38 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise.

Mr → Mr Brown

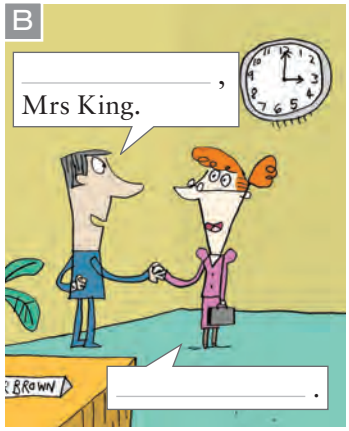
2 **a** Look at pictures A–D. Complete the conversations with these phrases. Which three phrases mean *Hello*? Which phrase means *Goodbye*?

Good morning Good evening
Good night Good afternoon

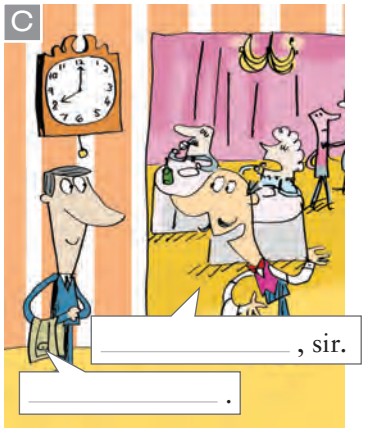
A



B



C



D



b CD1 ▸ 39 PRONUNCIATION Listen and check. Listen again and practise.

c Work in pairs. Practise the conversations.

REAL WORLD Email addresses

3 Look at this email address. Notice how we say . and @.

eve.smith@webmail.com

eve **dot** smith **at** webmail **dot** com

REAL WORLD 2.1 ▸ p117



4 **a** Work in pairs. Say email addresses 1–4.

b CD1 ▸ 40 Listen and check.

5 **a** CD1 ▸ 41 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise email addresses 1–4.

.co.uk → @citygym.co.uk → peter.west@citygym.co.uk

b Ask three students for their email addresses. Write the email addresses. Are they correct?

What's your email address? It's …

The City Gym

REAL WORLD
Personal information questions

6 Write the vowels (*a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*) in these questions.

1 What's your f *i* rst n *a* m *e* , please?
2 What's your s _ rn _ m _ ?
3 What's your n _ t _ _ n _ l _ ty?
4 What's your _ ddr _ ss?
5 What's your m _ b _ l _ n _ mb _ r?
6 What's your _ m _ _ l _ ddr _ ss?

REAL WORLD 2.2 ▸ p117

7 **a** VIDEO ▸ 2 CD1 ▸ 42 Look at the photo. Karen wants to join The City Gym. Watch or listen to her conversation with Peter. Tick (✓) the questions in **6** when you hear them.

b Watch or listen again. Complete form A.



A

The City Gym

New Member Form

first name *Karen*
surname
nationality
address *Road*
Liverpool
mobile number
email address

The City Gym, 12 Morton Street, Liverpool L8 3RF

c Work in pairs. Compare answers.

8 CD1 ▸ 43 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the questions in **6**.

9 **a** Work in pairs. Interview your partner and fill in form B.

b Check your partner's form. Is it correct?

B

The City Gym

New Member Form

first name
surname
nationality
address
mobile number
email address

The City Gym, 12 Morton Street, Liverpool L8 3RF

2D VOCABULARY AND SKILLS

How old is she?

Vocabulary numbers 13–100
Real World *How old … ?*
Skills Listening: five conversations

QUICK REVIEW Numbers 0–12 Write the numbers 0–12 in words (*zero*, *one*, etc.). Work in pairs. Check your partner's spelling. Then say the numbers.

1 CD1 ▸ 44 PRONUNCIATION Listen and say these numbers.

13 thirteen	17 seventeen
14 fourteen	18 eighteen
15 fifteen	19 nineteen
16 sixteen	20 twenty

2 **a** Match these words to the numbers.

~~thirty~~ ninety seventy forty
eighty fifty a hundred sixty

30 *thirty*	60 _____	90 _____
40 _____	70 _____	100 _____
50 _____	80 _____	

b CD1 ▸ 45 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise.

HELP WITH LISTENING

Numbers with *-teen* and *-ty*

3 **a** CD1 ▸ 46 Listen to these numbers. Notice the stress.

fourteen forty sixteen sixty eighteen eighty

b Where is the stress in these numbers?

seventeen ninety fifty thirteen
thirty nineteen seventy fifteen

c CD1 ▸ 47 Listen and check.

4 CD1 ▸ 46 CD1 ▸ 47 PRONUNCIATION Listen again and practise.

5 **a** Write the numbers.

21 *twenty-one*	24 _____	27 _____
22 _____	25 _____	28 _____
23 _____	26 _____	29 _____

b Work in pairs. Say these numbers.

27 35 49 52 68 73 86 94

6 **a** Write four numbers.

b Work in new pairs. Say your numbers. Write your partner's numbers. Are they correct?



7 **a** Look at the photo. Match these words to 1–5.

a girl ☐ a car ☐ a house ☐ a cat ☐ a dog ☐

b CD1 ▸ 48 Listen to five conversations. Fill in the gaps with the correct number.

a The cat is _____ .
b The house is _____ years old.
c The girl is _____ .
d The car is _____ years old.
e The dog is _____ .

8 **a** Fill in the gaps with these words.

~~How~~ is are I'm old

[1] *How* old [2] _____ your house?

It's 100 years [3] _____ .

How old [4] _____ you?

[5] _____ thirty.

b CD1 ▸ 49 PRONUNCIATION Listen and check. Listen again and practise.

9 Work in pairs. Look again at photo A. Ask questions with *How old … ?*.











10 **a** Work in new pairs. Look at the photos. Guess how old the people are. Use these ages.

2	3	5	13	16	22	24	35
41	47	51	58	71	76	80	87

I think Amybeth is 22.

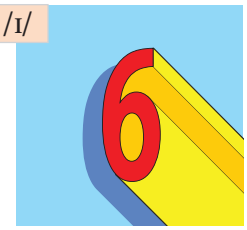
I think she's 24.

b Check on p134. Are your answers correct?

HELP WITH PRONUNCIATION /ɪ/ and /iː/

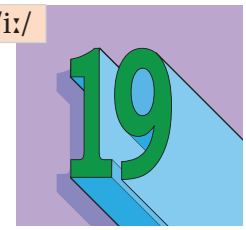
1 CD1 50 Look at the pictures. Listen to the sounds and words. Listen again and practise.

/ɪ/



six

/iː/



nineteen

2 CD1 51 Listen to these words. Notice how we say the **pink** and **blue** vowels. Listen again and practise.

/ɪ/	/iː/
six thing his	nineteen he's she's
single Miss women	people please
British watches	Chinese police email
evening fifteen	evening fifteen

3 **a** Look at the vowels in **bold** in these words. Do we say /ɪ/ or /iː/?

it's /ɪ/	three /iː/	sandwiches	teacher	
think	married	isn't	read	musician
assistant	me	Spanish	Japanese	sixteen

b Work in pairs. Compare answers.

c CD1 52 Listen and check. Listen again and practise.

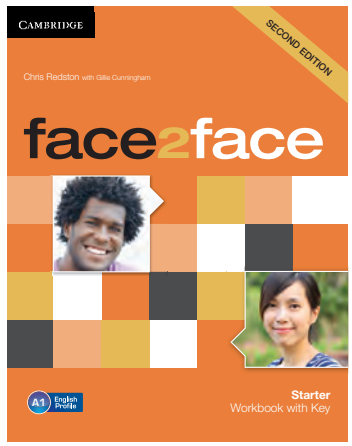
continue2learn

Vocabulary, Grammar and Real World

- **Extra Practice 2 and Progress Portfolio 2** p98
- **Language Summary 2** p116
- **2A–D** Workbook p8

Reading and Writing

- **Portfolio 2** Three people Workbook p54
  Reading business cards; addresses; forms
  Writing capital letters (2); filling in a form



3A Two cities

Vocabulary adjectives (1); word order with adjectives; *very*
Grammar *be* (plural): positive, negative, questions and short answers

QUICK REVIEW Numbers 1–100 Work in pairs. Count from 1 to 100 in threes: A *one* B *four* A *seven*. Then count from 1 to 100 in fours: A *one* B *five* A *nine*.

Adjectives (1)

1 **a** Match the adjectives to pictures a–h.

good	d	bad
hot		cold
big		small
new		old
expensive		cheap
beautiful		ugly
friendly		unfriendly
nice		



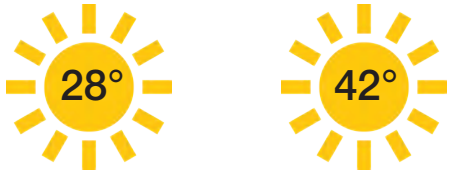
b CD1 53 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise.

HELP WITH VOCABULARY
Word order with adjectives; *very*

2 **a** Read these rules about adjectives.

- **Adjectives** go after ***be***: *Your watch **is** **nice**.*
- **Adjectives** go before **nouns**: *It's a **new car**.*
- **Adjectives** are not plural with **plural nouns**: *They're **good friends**.*

b Look at the pictures and read the sentences. Then read the rule.



It's hot. **It's very hot.**

- We put ***very*** before **adjectives**: *It's **very hot**.*

VOCABULARY 3.2 p118

3 Make sentences with these words.

1 a / It's / computer / old / very .
It's a very old computer.
2 a / He's / good / very / actor .
3 an / camera / It's / expensive .
4 very / nice / friends / are / His .
5 good / musician / a / She's .
6 is / very / house / beautiful / Her .
7 a / It's / night / cold / very .
8 friendly / children / Your / very / are .

An email to friends

4 **a** Work in pairs. Do you know these words?

a hotel	a room	a restaurant
a café	a mosque	a museum

b Check new words in **4a** with your teacher.

c Read email A. Where are Alice and Mike?

A

Hi Liz and Steve

How are you? We're in Istanbul and it's very hot here! Istanbul is a beautiful city and the people are very friendly. The restaurants are good and they aren't very expensive. We're in a small hotel near the Blue Mosque. The rooms are nice and they're very big. We aren't in the hotel now, we're in a café. Where are you? Are you in London?

Love Alice and Mike



5 Read email A again. Tick (✓) the true sentences. Change the adjectives in the false sentences.

hot

1 It's very ~~cold~~ in Istanbul.
2 Istanbul is a beautiful city. ✓
3 The people are unfriendly.
4 The restaurants are good.
5 Alice and Mike are in a big hotel.
6 The hotel rooms are nice.
7 The rooms are very small.

HELP WITH GRAMMAR

be (plural): positive and negative

6 Fill in the gaps with *'re* or *aren't*.

POSITIVE (+)

We _____ in a small hotel. (= we are)
You *'re* from the UK. (= you are)
They _____ very big. (= they are)

NEGATIVE (–)

We _____ in the hotel now. (= are not)
You *aren't* from Turkey.
They _____ very expensive.

TIPS • With plural nouns we write *people are* not ~~*people're*~~, *rooms are* not ~~*rooms're*~~, etc.
• *You* is singular and plural: *You're* ***a*** *student. You're student****s****.*

GRAMMAR 3.1 p119

7 CD1 54 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the sentences in **6**.

HELP WITH LISTENING Contractions

8 **a** CD1 55 Listen and write the contractions (*I'm*, *we're*, *aren't*, etc.).

1 We *aren't* from Italy, _____ from Spain.
2 _____ a new hotel, but it _____ very nice.
3 _____ a doctor and he _____ married.
4 You _____ Australian, _____ American.
5 _____ a manager and _____ a musician.
6 _____ actors, but they _____ very good.

b Work in pairs. Compare answers.

9 CD1 55 PRONUNCIATION Listen again and practise the sentences in **8a**.

Where are they?

10 Read email B. Where are Liz and Steve? Then choose the correct words.

B

Hi Alice and Mike

Thanks for your email. Steve and I [1]*isn't* / *aren't* in London now, we [2]*'s* / *'re* in Cairo! It [3]*'s* / *'re* a very beautiful city. The people [4]*is* / *are* very friendly and the restaurants [5]*isn't* / *aren't* very expensive. We [6]*'re* / *'s* in a big hotel near the Egyptian Museum. The rooms [7]*is* / *are* very nice, but the hotel [8]*isn't* / *aren't* cheap. It [9]*'s* / *'re* very hot here too!

Love Liz and Steve



HELP WITH GRAMMAR

be (plural): questions and short answers

11 Fill in the gaps with *are* or *aren't*.

QUESTIONS (?)	SHORT ANSWERS
Are we in room 216?	Yes, you are. No, you _____ .
_____ you in London?	Yes, we _____ . No, we aren't.
_____ they in a big hotel?	Yes, they are. No, they _____ .
Where _____ we / you / they? Where _____ Liz and Steve?	

GRAMMAR 3.2 p119

12 CD1 56 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the questions and short answers in **11**.

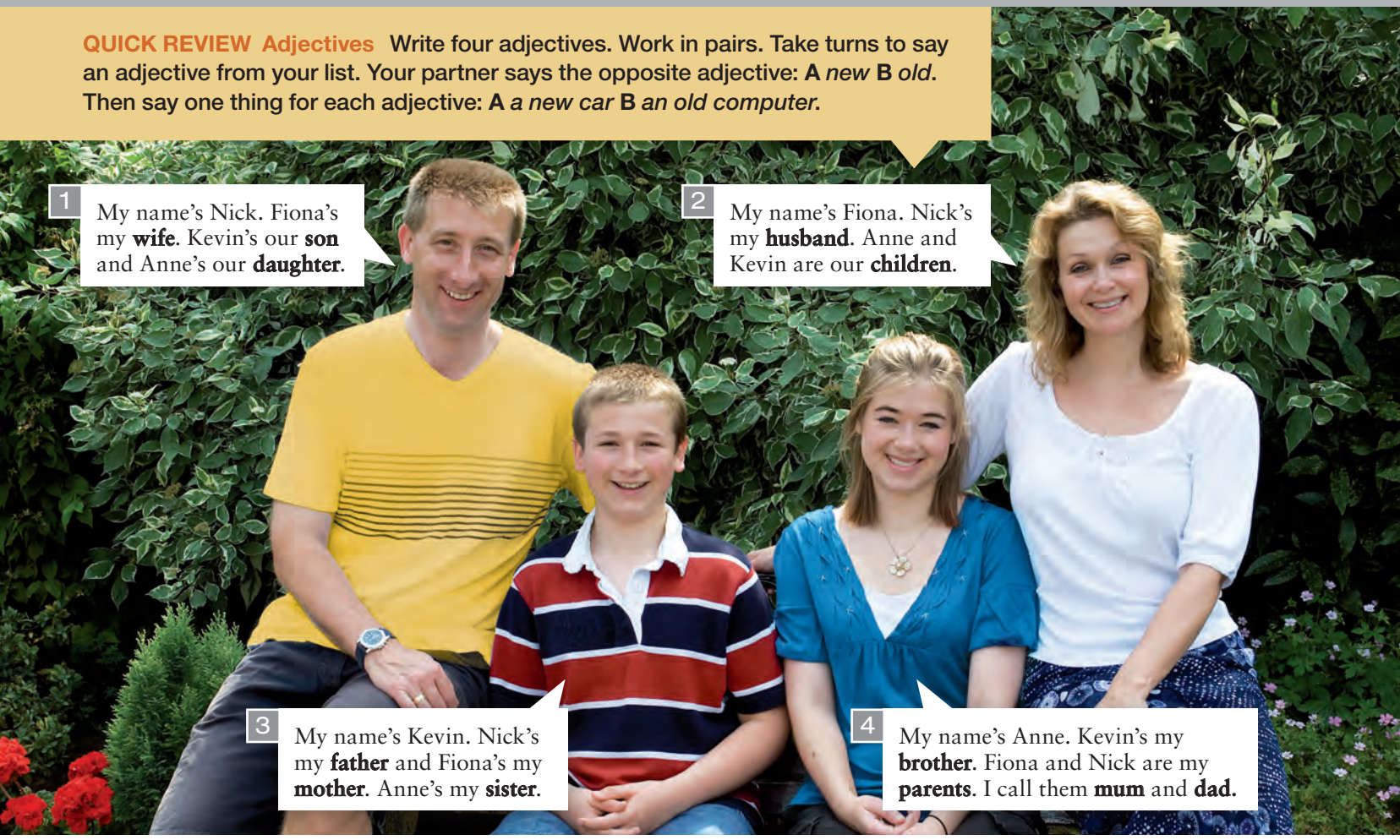
Get ready … Get it right!

13 Work in pairs. Student A p88. Student B p93.

3B Brothers and sisters

Vocabulary family
Grammar possessive *'s*; subject pronouns (*I*, *you*, etc.) and possessive adjectives (*my*, *your*, etc.)

QUICK REVIEW Adjectives Write four adjectives. Work in pairs. Take turns to say an adjective from your list. Your partner says the opposite adjective: **A** *new* **B** *old*. Then say one thing for each adjective: **A** *a new car* **B** *an old computer*.



Our family

1 CD1 57 Look at the photo. Read and listen to the Cooper family.

2 **a** Work in pairs. Look again at the photo. Then complete the table with words in bold in 1–4.

men / boys	women / girls	both
father (_____)	_____ (**mum**)	_____
_____	**daughter**	_____ (singular: **child**)
husband	_____	
_____	**sister**	

b CD1 58 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise.

3 Choose the correct words.

1 Nick is Fiona's *son* / *husband*.
2 Kevin is Nick's *brother* / *son*.
3 Fiona is Kevin's *mother* / *daughter*.
4 Anne is Fiona's *sister* / *daughter*.
5 Nick is Anne's *brother* / *father*.
6 Anne is Kevin's *mother* / *sister*.
7 Nick and Fiona are Kevin and Anne's *children* / *parents*.

HELP WITH GRAMMAR Possessive *'s*

4 Read the rule.

- We use a name (*Nick*, etc.) or a noun for a person (*sister*, etc.) + ***'s*** for the possessive.
  *Fiona is Nick**'s** wife. It's my sister**'s** car.*

TIP • ***'s*** can mean ***is*** or ***the possessive***: *Anne**'s** my sister.* (*'s* = is); *Kevin is Nick**'s** son.* (*'s* = possessive).

GRAMMAR 3.3 p119

5 CD1 59 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the sentences in 3.

6 Make sentences about these people.

1 Nick → Kevin *Nick is Kevin's father.*
2 Fiona → Nick
3 Kevin → Fiona
4 Anne → Nick
5 Kevin → Anne
6 Anne and Kevin → Nick and Fiona

Our grandchildren



7 **a** Look at the photo. Sid and Mary are Kevin and Anne's grandparents. Then write these words in the table.

grandparents grandson grandmother

	grandfather	_____
	_____	granddaughter
	_____	grandchildren

b CD1 60 **PRONUNCIATION** Listen and practise.

8 **a** CD1 61 Listen to Mary talk about her family. Put these people in the order she talks about them (1–5).

Sid [1] Anne [ ] Fiona [ ] Kevin [ ] Nick [ ]

b Listen again. Answer these questions.

1 How old is Sid? *He's 64.*
2 What is Fiona's job?
3 How old is Fiona?
4 What is Nick's job?
5 Is Anne a good musician?
6 How old is Kevin?

HELP WITH GRAMMAR Subject pronouns (*I*, *you*, etc.) and possessive adjectives (*my*, *your*, etc.)

9 **a** Look at these sentences. Then complete the table with the words in **blue** and **pink**.

I'm Mary and this is Sid, **my** husband.
Her husband's name is Nick and **he**'s a doctor.
These are **their** two children – **our** grandchildren.
It's a very nice photo, I think.

subject pronouns	____	**you**	____	**she**	____	**we**	**they**
possessive adjectives	____	**your**	**his**	____	**its**	____	____

b Are these words verbs (V) or nouns (N)?

be [V] sister [N] family [ ]
listen [ ] read [ ] cat [ ]

c Read these rules.

- We use **subject pronouns** with verbs (***I'm***, ***you*** *listen*, ***they*** *read*, etc.).
- We use **possessive adjectives** with nouns (***my*** *sister*, ***your*** *family*, ***their*** *cat*, etc.).

GRAMMAR 3.4 p119

10 Choose the correct words.

1 Excuse me. Is this *you* / *your* dictionary?
2 *They* / *Their* aren't with *they* / *their* parents.
3 This is *we* / *our* cat. *He* / *His* name's Prince.
4 *I* / *My* friend Charlotte is from *you* / *your* city.
5 Are *you* / *your* at *he* / *his* house now?
6 *She* / *Her* brother's a teacher, but *she* / *her* isn't.

Get ready … Get it right!

11 Write the names of people in your family.

12 **a** Work in pairs. Tell your partner about the people in your family. Ask questions about the people in your partner's family.

Pedro is my brother. How old is he?
He's 29. What's his job?
He's a waiter. Is he married?

b Tell the class about one person in your partner's family.

Pedro is Carola's brother. He's 29 and he's a waiter. He's …

3C REAL WORLD Eat in or take away?



Vocabulary food and drink (1)
Real World money and prices; *How much … ?*; in a café

QUICK REVIEW Family and possessive 's Write the name of a friend and the names of two people in his / her family. Work in pairs. Tell your partner about your people. Ask questions if possible: **A** *My friend's name is Tamer. He's 31.* **B** *What's his job?*

Money and prices

1 **a** Match prices 1–6 to a–f.

1	£10	a	ten dollars
2	10p	b	ten p (= pence)
3	£10.50	c	ten euros
4	€10	d	ten cents
5	$10	e	ten (pounds) fifty
6	10c	f	ten pounds

b CD1 62 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise.

2 **a** Work in pairs. Say these prices.



b CD1 63 PRONUNCIATION Listen and check. Listen again and practise.

3 **a** CD1 64 Listen to five conversations. Write the prices.

b Work in pairs. Compare answers.

REAL WORLD *How much … ?*

4 Fill in the gaps with *is* or *are*.

SINGULAR

1 How much _____ this watch?
2 How much _____ it?

PLURAL

3 How much _____ the pens?
4 How much _____ they?

REAL WORLD 3.2 p119

5 CD1 65 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the questions in **4**.



Can I help you?

6 **a** Look at the price list. Match the food and drink to photos 1–10.

b CD1 66 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the food and drink on the price list.

c Work in pairs. Look again at photos 1–10. Test your partner.

What's number 1? | A cheese and tomato sandwich.

7 Look again at the price list. Work in new pairs. Choose food and drink. Ask your partner the price.

How much is an espresso and a croissant? | Three pounds thirty.

8 **a** VIDEO 3 CD1 67 Look at the photo of Café Pronto. Then watch or listen to two customers. Tick (✓) what they order on the price list.

b Watch or listen again. How much does each customer spend?



REAL WORLD *In a café*

9 Read the conversation. Fill in the gaps with these words.

~~help~~ very away please thanks in

ASSISTANT	CUSTOMER
Can I [1] *help* you?	Yes, (two cappuccinos), [2]_____ .
Sure. Anything else?	Yes, (a croissant and an egg sandwich), please. No, that's all, [3]_____ .
Eat in or take [4]_____ ?	Eat [5]_____ , please. Take away, please.
OK, that's (£8.60), please.	Thank you [6]_____ much. Thanks a lot.
You're welcome.	

REAL WORLD 3.3 p119

10 **a** CD1 68 **PRONUNCIATION** Listen and practise the sentences in **9**.

b Work in pairs. Practise the conversation in **9**. Take turns to be the customer.

11 **a** Work in new pairs. Look again at the price list. Take turns to order food and drink.

b Role-play a conversation for the class.



3D VOCABULARY AND SKILLS

Food I like

Vocabulary food and drink (2); *love*, *like*, *eat*, *drink*, *a lot of*
Skills Listening: Fiona's family; Reading and Listening: food and drink I like

QUICK REVIEW Money and prices Write four prices (*$55*, *£10.50*, etc.). Work in pairs. Say your prices. Write your partner's prices. Are they correct?



1 **a** Work in pairs. Look at the photo. Match these words to 1–16.

coffee 3 | milk | tea | sugar | meat | fish
orange juice | eggs | cheese | bread | pasta
rice | vegetables | fruit | chocolate | water

b CD1 69 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise.

2 **a** Look at the photo for one minute. Remember the food and drink.

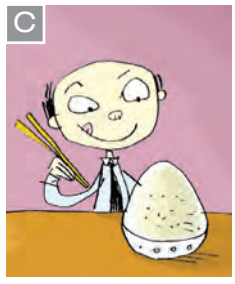
b Close your books. Work in pairs. Say all the food and drink in the photo.

3 Match sentences 1–4 to pictures A–D.

1 I **like** fish. *B*
2 I **love** chocolate.
3 I **drink a lot of** coffee.
4 I **eat a lot of** rice.









4 CD1 70 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the sentences in **3**.

5 **a** CD1 71 Listen to Fiona. Tick (✓) the food and drink in **1a** she talks about.

b Listen again. Choose the correct words.

1 Nick is Fiona's *husband* / *son*.
2 Fiona and Nick love *coffee* / *milk*.
3 They drink a lot of *water* / *tea*.
4 They eat a lot of *meat* / *fish*.
5 Anne and Kevin like *eggs* / *cheese*.
6 They also eat a lot of *vegetables* / *pasta*.
7 They love *fruit* / *chocolate*.

c Work in pairs. Compare answers.

6 **a** Check these words with your teacher.

a cup (of coffee)	a litre	ice cream
biscuits	a vegetarian	

b Read about Zoe, Ed, Mei and Ben. Fill in the gaps with their names.

1 *Zoe* and *Ben* like rice and pasta.
2 _____ and _____ eat a lot of sandwiches.
3 _____ and _____ drink a lot of coffee.
4 _____ and _____ love salads.
5 _____ and _____ eat a lot of fruit.
6 _____ and _____ like chocolate biscuits.
7 _____ and _____ love ice cream.



ZOE I love coffee and I drink four or five cups a day. I also drink a lot of water, about two litres a day. I like rice and pasta, and I eat a lot of salads and vegetables. I also like French cheese, and I love Italian ice cream!



ED I drink a lot of coffee, but I like it black, not with milk. I also like chocolate biscuits with my coffee. I eat a lot of meat and fish, but not fruit or vegetables. And I eat a lot of bread – I love egg sandwiches.



MEI In the morning I drink tea, not coffee. I eat a lot of rice, fish and vegetables, of course. I love apples and oranges, and I eat a lot of cheese sandwiches. But I also eat a lot of chocolate biscuits in the evening!



BEN I'm a vegetarian, so I eat a lot of fruit and vegetables, but not meat or fish. I also like rice and pasta, and I love salads. I drink a lot of fruit juice – people say it's very good for you. And I love chocolate ice cream!

7 **a** CD1 72 Listen to Zoe, Ed, Mei and Ben. Underline all the food words.

b Work in pairs. Compare answers.

8 **a** Write six sentences about you. Use *love*, *like*, *eat*, *drink*, *a lot of* and words from **1a**.

I eat a lot of pasta.

b Work in groups. Say your sentences. Do you like the same things?

HELP WITH PRONUNCIATION /ɒ/ and /ʌ/

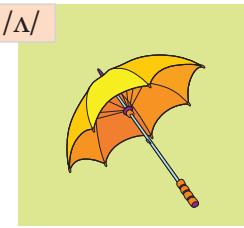
1 CD1 73 Look at the pictures. Listen to the sounds and words. Listen again and practise.

/ɒ/



coffee

/ʌ/



umbrella

2 CD1 74 Listen to these words. Notice how we say the **pink** and **blue** vowels. Listen again and practise.

/ɒ/	/ʌ/
coffee dog doctor	umbrella much
hot watch chocolate	number country
orange wrong	mother son brother
dollar shop	husband love money

3 **a** Work in pairs. Cover **2**. Then look at the vowels in bold. Which vowel sound is different?

1 h**o**t **o**range m**u**ch
2 m**o**ther d**o**ctor s**o**n
3 d**o**llar c**ou**ntry m**o**ney
4 d**o**g ch**o**colate l**o**ve
5 sh**o**p n**u**mber br**o**ther
6 w**a**tch h**u**sband wr**o**ng

b CD1 75 Listen and check. Listen again and practise.

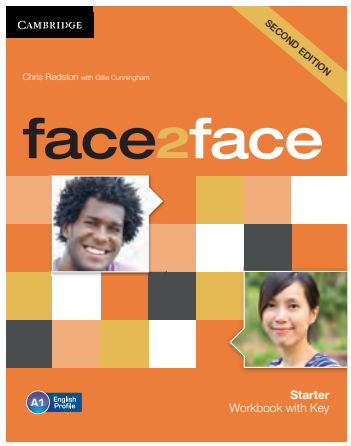
continue2learn

Vocabulary, Grammar and Real World

- **Extra Practice 3 and Progress Portfolio 3** p99
- **Language Summary 3** p118
- **3A–D** Workbook p13

Reading and Writing

- **Portfolio 3** See you soon! Workbook p56
  Reading holiday emails
  Writing apostrophes; *and* and *but*; a holiday email



4A Live, work and study

Vocabulary phrases with *like*, *have*, *live*, *work*, *study*
Grammar Present Simple (*I*, *you*, *we*, *they*): positive and negative

QUICK REVIEW Food and drink Write ten words for food and drink. Work in pairs. Compare lists. Say the things you like on your partner's list: **A** *I like cheese.*

Phrases with *like*, *have*, *live*, *work*, *study*

1 a Match these words or phrases to the verbs.

~~football~~	two children	English	in a flat
for a Spanish company	rock music	languages	
in the centre of the city	a car	in an office	

TIP • a flat (UK) = an apartment (US)



like



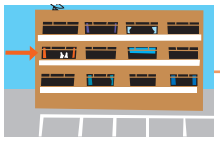
a *football* b



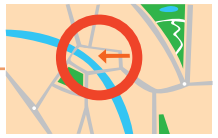
have



c d



live



e f



work



g h



study



i j

b CD2 1 **PRONUNCIATION** Listen and practise.

c Work in pairs. Test your partner on the phrases in **1a**.

languages study languages

Life in Mexico

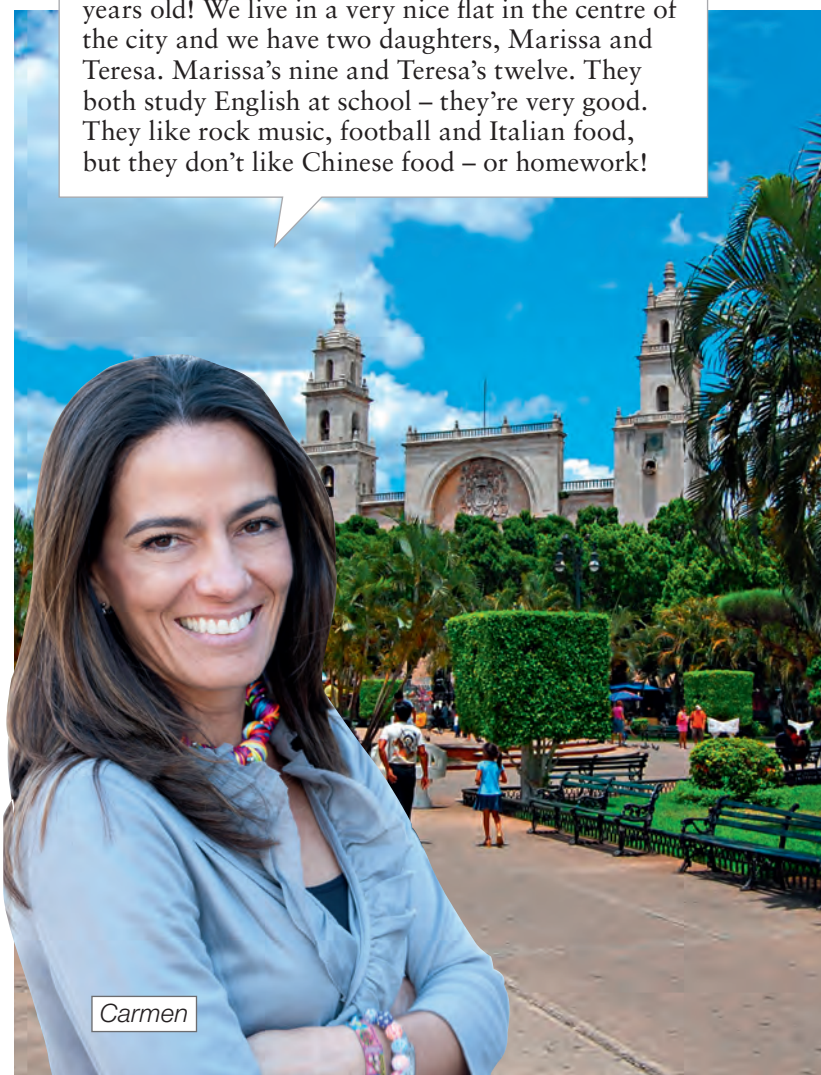
2 a CD2 2 Read and listen to Carmen. Who are Cesar, Marissa and Teresa?

b Read about Carmen again. Choose the correct words.

1 Carmen is *single* / *married*.
2 She's *Mexican* / *Colombian*.
3 Carmen and Cesar live in *Mexico City* / *Mérida*.
4 Carmen's phone is *two* / *three* years old.
5 Their flat *is* / *isn't* in the centre of the city.
6 Their daughters *are* / *aren't* very good at English.
7 They like *Italian* / *Chinese* food.

c Work in pairs. Compare answers.

Hello, my name's Carmen. I'm married and my husband's name is Cesar. We're from Mexico, but we don't live in Mexico City. We live in a city called Mérida. I work for a mobile phone company, but I don't have a new phone. My phone is three years old! We live in a very nice flat in the centre of the city and we have two daughters, Marissa and Teresa. Marissa's nine and Teresa's twelve. They both study English at school – they're very good. They like rock music, football and Italian food, but they don't like Chinese food – or homework!



Carmen

HELP WITH GRAMMAR

Present Simple (*I*, *you*, *we*, *they*): positive and negative

3 **a** Underline the verbs in these sentences. They are in the Present Simple.

POSITIVE (+)

I work for a mobile phone company.
You study English.
We live in a very nice flat.
They like rock music.

b Look at these sentences. Notice the word order.

NEGATIVE (–)

I	**don't**	**have**	a new phone. (**don't** = do not)
You	**don't**	**study**	Russian.

c Write these sentences in the table.

1 We **don't live** in Mexico City.
2 They **don't like** Chinese food.

TIP • The Present Simple positive and negative are the same for *I*, *you*, *we* and *they*.

GRAMMAR 4.1 p121

4 CD2 3 **PRONUNCIATION** Listen and practise the sentences in **3**.

Life in the USA

5 **a** Read about Richard. Fill in the gaps with the positive (+) or negative (–) form of *like*, *have*, *live*, *work* or *study*.

b CD2 4 Listen and check your answers.

6 **a** Tick (✓) the sentences that are true for you. Make the other sentences negative.

1 I live in the centre of the city.
I don't live in the centre of the city.
2 I work in an office.
3 I like Italian food.
4 I like rock music.
5 I have a new computer.
6 I have a sister.
7 I study English.
8 I live in a small house.
9 I work for an American company.

b Work in pairs. Compare sentences. How many are the same?

Get ready … Get it right!

7 Write three true sentences and three false sentences about you. Use phrases from **1a** or your own ideas.

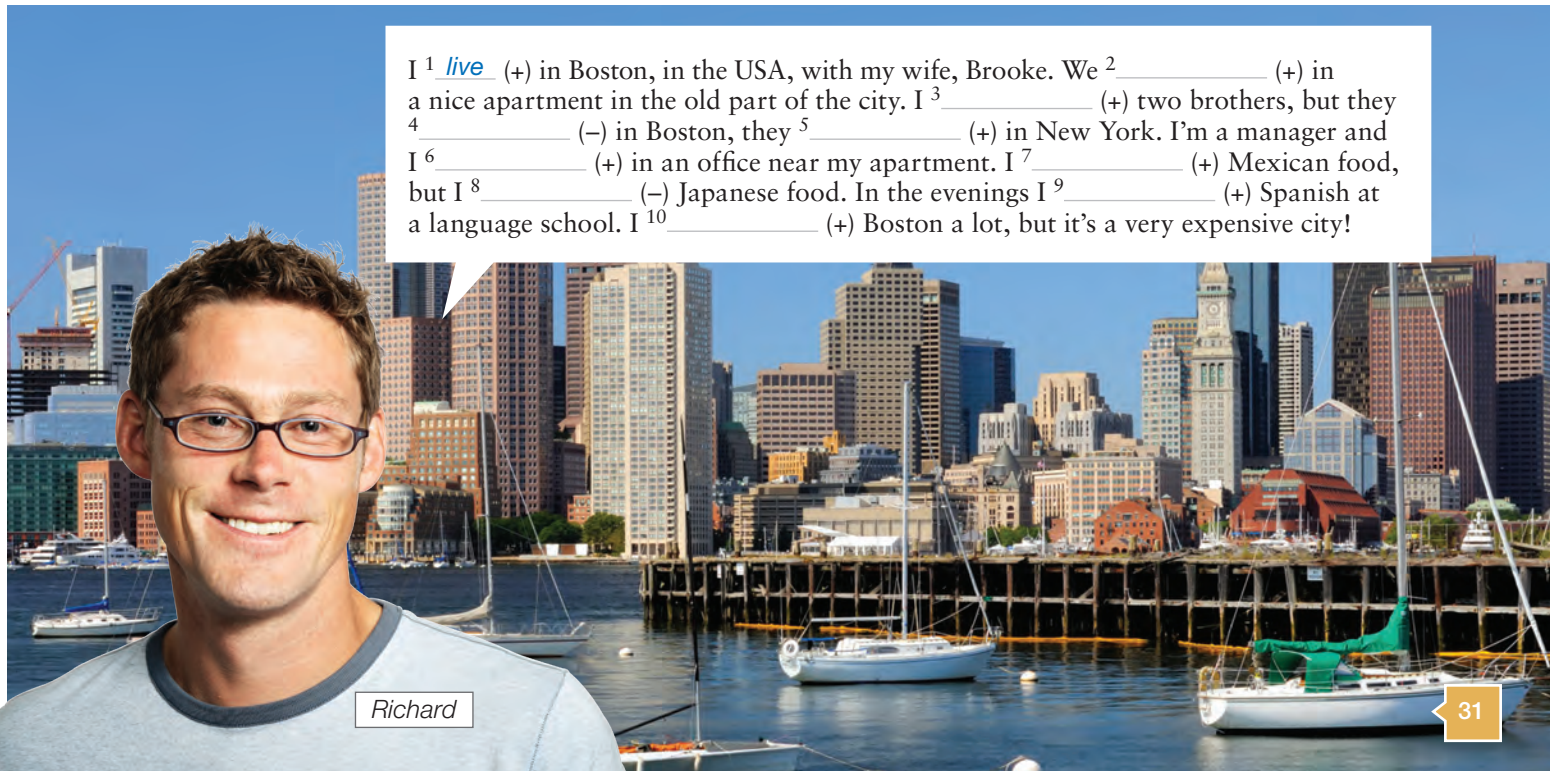
I don't like rock music.
I live in a very small flat.
I work in a restaurant.

8 Work in new pairs. Say your sentences. Are your partner's sentences true or false?

I don't like rock music.

I think that's true / false.

Yes, you're right. / No, you're wrong.



I [1] *live* (+) in Boston, in the USA, with my wife, Brooke. We [2] _____ (+) in a nice apartment in the old part of the city. I [3] _____ (+) two brothers, but they [4] _____ (–) in Boston, they [5] _____ (+) in New York. I'm a manager and I [6] _____ (+) in an office near my apartment. I [7] _____ (+) Mexican food, but I [8] _____ (–) Japanese food. In the evenings I [9] _____ (+) Spanish at a language school. I [10] _____ (+) Boston a lot, but it's a very expensive city!

Richard

4B My free time

Vocabulary free time activities
Grammar Present Simple (*I, you, we, they*): questions and short answers

QUICK REVIEW Present Simple positive and negative
Write four sentences about you. Use these phrases: *I have … , I don't have … , I live … , I work … , I like … , I don't like … .* Work in pairs. Say your sentences. Are they the same? **A** *I have two sisters.* **B** *Me too.*

















Free time activities

1 **a** Work in pairs. Match these phrases to pictures 1–8.

go to concerts 7 | go to the cinema ☐
go shopping ☐ | go out with friends ☐
play tennis ☐ | watch TV or DVDs ☐
play video games ☐ | eat out ☐

b CD2 5 **PRONUNCIATION** Listen and practise.

2 **a** Write four sentences about your free time. Use phrases from **1a**.

I play tennis in my free time.
I watch TV a lot.

b Work in pairs. Say your sentences. Are they the same?

An online interview

3 **a** Check these words with your teacher.

a band | noise | fantastic | the weather | rap

b CD2 6 Look at the web page on p33. Read and listen to the interview with Ruby and Phil Connor. Find three things they do in their free time.

4 **a** Read the interview again. Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)?

1 Ruby and Phil are married. *F*
2 They live in a big house in London.
3 They don't like the weather in London.
4 They listen to rock music and rap.
5 They don't watch DVDs.
6 They go to the cinema a lot.
7 They don't like Indian food.
8 They love fruit and chocolate biscuits.

b Work in pairs. Compare answers.

HELP WITH GRAMMAR Present Simple (*I, you, we, they*): questions and short answers

5 **a** Look at these questions. Notice the word order.

***WH-* QUESTIONS (?)**

Where	**do**	you	**live**	in the UK?
What music	**do**	you	**like**?	

b Write these questions in the table.

1 What **do** you **do** in your free time?
2 What food **do** you **like**?

c Fill in the gaps with *do* or *don't*.

***YES / NO* QUESTIONS (?)**	**SHORT ANSWERS**
Do you like London?	Yes, I do. No, I _____ .
_____ you go to concerts?	Yes, we _____ . No, we don't.
_____ they like Chinese food?	Yes, they _____ . No, they _____ .

TIP • Present Simple questions are the same for *I, you, we* and *they*.

GRAMMAR 4.2 p121

www.bestofbritish.co.uk/bignoise

Best of British

HOME | NEWS | INTERVIEWS | TICKETS | PHOTOS | CONCERTS | SHOP

TODAY WE TALK TO RUBY CONNOR AND HER BROTHER, PHIL, FROM THE BRITISH ROCK BAND BIG NOISE.

HI, RUBY AND PHIL. WHERE DO YOU LIVE IN THE UK?
RUBY We have a big flat in Camden, in London.

DO YOU LIKE LONDON?
RUBY Yes, I do. It's a fantastic city and the people are very friendly.
PHIL Yes, I love London too – but we don't like the weather here very much!

WHAT MUSIC DO YOU LIKE?
PHIL We listen to a lot of rock music, of course. We like the Red Hot Chili Peppers, Green Day and Muse.
RUBY We also like rap – we love Eminem and Jay-Z.

WHAT DO YOU DO IN YOUR FREE TIME?
RUBY We go out with friends a lot when we're in London.
PHIL And we watch a lot of DVDs, but we don't go to the cinema.

DO YOU GO TO CONCERTS?
RUBY Yes, we do. A lot of our friends are in bands and we go to their concerts when we have time.

AND THE LAST QUESTION. WHAT FOOD DO YOU LIKE?
PHIL Well, we eat out a lot. We like Indian and Chinese food.
RUBY Yes, and we eat a lot of fruit when we're at home.
PHIL Oh, and we love chocolate biscuits!

THANKS, RUBY AND PHIL. HAVE A NICE DAY!



6 **a** Fill in the gaps with *do* and these verbs.

~~live~~	do	like (x2)
have	eat	go (x2)

1 Where *do* Ruby and Phil *live* ?
2 _____ they _____ a small flat?
3 _____ they _____ the weather in London?
4 What _____ they _____ in their free time?
5 _____ they _____ out with friends a lot?
6 _____ they _____ to the cinema?
7 _____ they _____ Indian food?
8 _____ they _____ a lot of fruit?

b Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions.

HELP WITH LISTENING

Questions with *do you*

7 **a** CD2 ▸ 7 Listen to these questions. Notice how we say *do you*.

1 Where do you /dəjə/ live?
2 What music do you /dəjə/ like?
3 Do you /dəjə/ go to concerts?
4 Do you /dəjə/ like Mexican food?

b CD2 ▸ 8 Listen and write four questions with *do you*. You will hear each question twice.

c Work in pairs. Compare questions. Are they the same?

8 **a** CD2 ▸ 9 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the questions in **7a** and **7b** and the short answers.

b Work in pairs. Student A, ask the questions in **7a**. Student B, ask the questions in **7b**. Answer for you.

Get ready … Get it right!

9 Work in new pairs. Student A p86. Student B p91.

4C REAL WORLD Buying things

Vocabulary things to buy; *this, that, these, those*
Real World in a shop

QUICK REVIEW Present Simple Work in pairs. Ask questions with *Do you …?* and find three things you both do in your free time: **A** *Do you play tennis?* **B** *Yes, I do. / No, I don't.*



Things to buy

1 a Work in pairs. Match these words to pictures 1–10.

a magazine 1 | a newspaper ☐ | a map ☐
a postcard ☐ | a birthday card ☐
a box of chocolates ☐ | tissues ☐
sweets ☐ | batteries ☐ | chewing gum ☐

b CD2 ▸ 10 **PRONUNCIATION** Listen and practise.

c Look again at the pictures. Test your partner.

What's number 1? — A magazine.

HELP WITH VOCABULARY
this, that, these, those

2 Look at photos A–D. Then fill in the table with the words in bold in the questions.

	here !	there →
singular		
plural		

VOCABULARY 4.4 ▸ p120

3 CD2 ▸ 11 **PRONUNCIATION** Listen and practise the questions in photos A–D.

this → this map → How much is this map?









4 Fill in the gaps with *this*, *that*, *these* or *those*.



Anything else?

5 **a** VIDEO 4 CD2 12 Close your books. Then watch or listen to two conversations in a shop. What do the customers buy?

b Watch or listen again. Write the prices in these conversations.

CUSTOMER 1 Excuse me. Do you have any maps of London?
ASSISTANT Yes, they're over there.
C1 Oh, yes. Thanks. How much is this map?
A It's [1]£_____ .
C1 OK. And how much are those batteries?
A They're [2]£_____ .
C1 OK. This map and those batteries, please.
A Anything else?
C1 Yes, these sweets, please.
A OK. That's [3]£_____ , please.
C1 Here you are.
A Thanks a lot. Goodbye.
C1 Goodbye.

CUSTOMER 2 Hi. How much are these birthday cards?
A They're [4]£_____ each.
C2 OK, thanks. How much is that big box of chocolates?
A It's [5]£_____ .
C2 OK. Can I have that box of chocolates and these cards, please?
A Sure. Anything else?
C2 No, that's all, thanks.
A OK. That's [6]£_____ , please.
C2 Here you are.
A Thanks very much. Goodbye.
C2 Bye.

REAL WORLD In a shop

6 **a** Read these conversations. Fill in the gaps with these words.

~~Excuse~~ much all are lot else have

CUSTOMER	ASSISTANT
[1] *Excuse* me. Do you have any (maps of London)?	Yes, they're over there.
How much is (this map)?	It's (£5.75).
How [2]_____ are (these birthday cards)?	They're (£1.79) each.
Can I [3]_____ (that box of chocolates) and (these cards), please?	Sure. Anything [4]_____ ?
Yes, (these sweets), please. No, that's [5]_____ , thanks.	OK, that's (£12.33).
Here you [6]_____ .	Thanks a [7]_____ . Thanks very much.

b Read the conversations again. Find:

1 one question with *Do you have … .*
2 one question with *Can I have … .*
3 two questions with *How much … .*

REAL WORLD 4.1 p121

7 CD2 13 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the sentences in **6a**.

8 Work in pairs. Practise the conversations in **5b**. Take turns to be the customer.

9 Work in the same pairs. Student A p88. Student B p93.

10 **a** Work in new pairs. Write a conversation in a shop. Use language from **1a** and **6a**.

b Practise the conversation until you can remember it.

c Work in groups of four. Role-play your conversation for the other pair. What does the customer buy? How much does he or she spend?

4D VOCABULARY AND SKILLS

What time is it?

Vocabulary days of the week; time words
Real World telling the time; talking about the time
Skills Reading & Listening: days and times

QUICK REVIEW Things to buy Write ten things you can buy in a shop. Work in pairs. Say the things on your list to your partner. How many are the same?

1 a CD2 ▸ 14 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the days of the week.

Monday Tuesday
Wednesday Thursday Friday
Saturday Sunday

b Work in pairs. Say a day. Your partner says the next two days.

Friday — Saturday, Sunday

c Answer these questions.

1 What day is it **today**?
2 What day is it **tomorrow**?
3 What days are **the weekend**?

2 a Put these time words in order.

a second 1 a year 7 an hour ☐ a day ☐
a month ☐ a minute ☐ a week ☐

b CD2 ▸ 15 PRONUNCIATION Listen and check. Listen again and practise.

c Fill in the gaps with words in **2a**. Use the singular or plural.

a 60 *seconds* = 1 minute
b 60 _____ = 1 hour
c 24 _____ = 1 day
d 7 days = 1 _____
e 365 days = 1 _____
f 12 _____ = 1 year

3 a Work in pairs. Match these times to clocks A–D.

half past six C quarter to seven ☐
quarter past six ☐ six o'clock ☐

A 
B 
C 
D 

b We can say times in a different way. Work with your partner. Match these times to clocks A–D.

six A six thirty ☐ six forty-five ☐ six fifteen ☐

4 Match times 1–8 to clocks a–h.

1 five past six *c*
2 ten past six
3 twenty past six
4 twenty-five past six
5 twenty-five to seven
6 twenty to seven
7 ten to seven
8 five to seven

a 
b 
c 
d 
e 
f 
g 
h 

5 CD2 ▸ 16 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the times in **3a** and **4**.

6 a CD2 ▸ 17 Listen and write five times.

b Work in pairs. Compare answers.

7 a Look at pictures 1 and 2. Fill in the gaps with these words.

~~What~~ half it to time



b CD2 ▸ 18 PRONUNCIATION Listen and check. Listen again and practise.

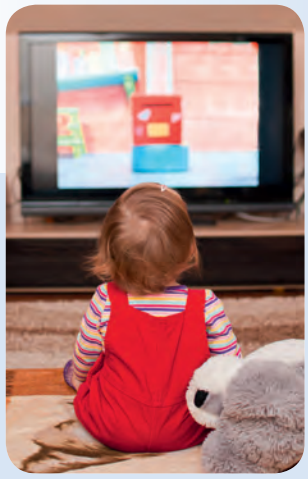
8 Work in pairs. Student A p89. Student B p94.

9 **a** Check these words with your teacher.

Europe	unlucky	a flight	an election

b Read about days and times around the world. Choose the correct answers.

DAYS AND TIMES



- In Europe the weekend is [a]*Monday and Tuesday / Saturday and Sunday*, but in Egypt and Libya the weekend is [b]*Friday and Saturday / Sunday and Monday*.
- In the USA, children between two and five years old watch TV for [c]*23 / 32* hours a week.
- When it's midday in the UK, it's [d]*morning / afternoon* in Brazil and [e]*morning / afternoon* in China.
- In English-speaking countries [f]*Tuesday 13th/ Friday 13th* is an unlucky day, but in a lot of Spanish-speaking countries [g]*Tuesday 13th/ Friday 13th* is unlucky.





- The flight from Paris to New York is about [h]*7 hours / 11½ hours* and the flight from Bangkok to London is about [i]*7 hours / 11½ hours*.
- Elections in Germany, Russia, Poland and Mexico are on [j]*Fridays / Sundays*. Elections in the USA are on [k]*Tuesdays / Thursdays* and in the UK they're on [l]*Tuesdays / Thursdays*.



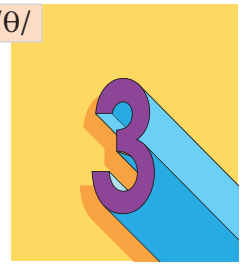
c Work in pairs. Compare answers.

d CD2 19 Listen and check. How many are correct?

HELP WITH PRONUNCIATION /θ/ and /ð/

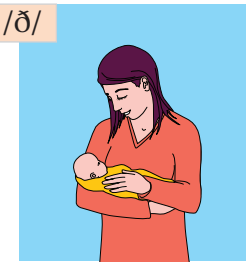
1 CD2 20 Look at the pictures. Listen to the sounds and words. Listen again and practise.

/θ/



three

/ð/



mother

2 CD2 21 Listen to these words. Notice how we say *th* in these words. Listen again and practise.

/θ/	/ð/
three thirteen	mother father brother
thirty month	this that these
think thing thanks	those the then
birthday Thursday	they with their

3 **a** CD2 22 Listen to these sentences. Listen again and practise.

1 I think that's your mother.
2 Are those your things?
3 It's their brother's birthday on Thursday.
4 I think that man's thirty-three.
5 Thanks for those thirteen emails.
6 This is the first Thursday of the month.

b Work in pairs. Practise the sentences.

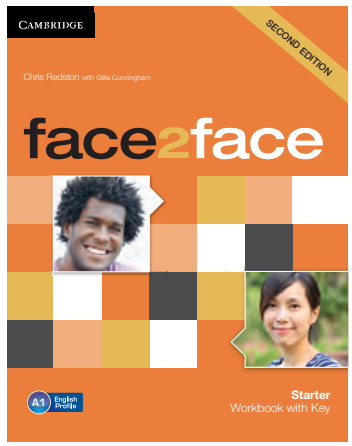
continue2learn

Vocabulary, Grammar and Real World

- **Extra Practice 4 and Progress Portfolio 4** p100
- **Language Summary 4** p120
- **4A–D** Workbook p18

Reading and Writing

- **Portfolio 4** Internet profiles Workbook p58
  Reading two internet profiles
  Writing word order (1) & (2); your internet profile



5A A typical day

Vocabulary daily routines
Grammar Present Simple (*he*, *she*, *it*): positive and negative

QUICK REVIEW Telling the time Write six times (*6.30*, *9.10*, etc.). Work in pairs. Take turns to say your times. Write your partner's times. Are they correct?



Daily routines

1 **a** Look at the pictures of Carol's daily routine. Then match these words or phrases to pictures 1–10.

get up 1 | go to bed | leave home
get home | start work | finish work
have breakfast | have lunch
have dinner | sleep

b CD2 23 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise.

c Work in pairs. Match the words and phrases in **1a** to these times of day.

morning	*get up*
afternoon	
evening	
night	

2 **a** Work in new pairs. Tell your partner what time you do the things in **1a** in the week. What do you do at the same time?

I get up at seven o'clock. — Me too!
I go to bed at eleven. — I go to bed at half past ten.

b Tell the class things you and your partner do at the same time.

Magda and I get up at seven o'clock.

Carol's routine

3 **a** Check these words with your teacher.

university | midday | midnight | before (10.30)
after (10.30) | about (10.30)

b Look again at pictures 1–10. Then read about Carol's routine on p39 and fill in the gaps with the correct times.

c CD2 24 Listen and check your answers.


Carol

Carol and her brother Tom live in Manchester. Carol gets up at [a] *7.00*, but she doesn't like mornings! She **has** breakfast at about [b] _____ and she **leaves** home at [c] _____. She **works** in a mobile phone shop and she starts work at [d] _____. She has lunch at [e] _____ in a café near the shop. She **finishes** work at [f] _____ and **gets** home at [g] _____. She has dinner at [h] _____. She doesn't watch TV after dinner, she goes out with friends. She **goes** to bed at midnight and **sleeps** for about seven hours.

HELP WITH GRAMMAR Present Simple (*he*, *she*, *it*): positive and negative

4 **a** Look at these sentences. The verbs in **blue** are in the Present Simple. Then complete the rule.

POSITIVE (+)

Carol **leaves** home at 8.15. She **finishes** work at 5.30.
She **starts** work at 9.00. She **gets** home at 6.15.

- In positive sentences with *he*, *she* and *it* we add ***-s*** or _____ to the verb.

b Look at these spelling rules. Fill in the gaps with the verbs in bold in the text about Carol.

spelling rule	examples
most verbs: add ***-s***	likes *leaves* _____ _____ _____
verbs ending in *-ch* or *-sh*: add ***-es***	watches teaches _____
verbs ending in consonant + *y*: *y* → ***-ies***	studies
the verbs *go* and *do*: add ***-es***	_____ does
the verb *have* is irregular	_____

c Look at these sentences. Notice the word order.

NEGATIVE (–)

She	**doesn't**	**like**	mornings.	(**doesn't** = does not)
She	**doesn't**	**watch**	TV after dinner.	

TIP • The Present Simple negative is the same for *he*, *she*, *it*: ***He*** *doesn't have a car.* ***It*** *doesn't start today.*

GRAMMAR 5.1 p123

5 CD2 25 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the sentences in **4a** and **4c**.

6 **a** What are the *he*, *she*, *it* forms of these verbs?

1	like *likes*	5	have	9	eat
2	play	6	study	10	watch
3	start	7	love	11	drink
4	finish	8	go	12	read

b CD2 26 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise. Which *he*, *she*, *it* forms have the sound /ɪz/ at the end?

Tom's routine

7 **a** Read about Carol's brother, Tom. Put the verbs in brackets ( ) in the correct form of the Present Simple.


Tom

Tom's a waiter and he [1] *works* (work) in a restaurant in the centre of Manchester. He [2] _____ (not work) in the morning, so he [3] _____ (get up) at midday. He [4] _____ (not have) breakfast, but he [5] _____ (have) a big lunch before he [6] _____ (go) to work. He [7] _____ (leave) home at 4.30 and he [8] _____ (start) work at 5.00. He [9] _____ (finish) work at midnight, but he [10] _____ (not eat) in the restaurant. He [11] _____ (have) dinner when he [12] _____ (get) home and then he [13] _____ (watch) TV. Tom and Carol [14] _____ (not work) on Mondays, so they [15] _____ (have) lunch together and [16] _____ (talk) about the week.

b CD2 27 Listen and check. What do Carol and Tom do on Monday?

Get ready … Get it right!

8 Work in new pairs. Student A p89. Student B p94.

5B Where does she work?

Vocabulary time phrases with *on*, *in*, *at*
Grammar Present Simple (*he*, *she*, *it*): questions and short answers

QUICK REVIEW Daily routines Work in pairs. Tell each other about your routine in the week: **A** *I get up at six o'clock in the week.* **B** *Really? I get up at about ten!*

Time phrases with *on*, *in*, *at*

1 **a** Write these words and phrases in the correct column.

~~Sunday~~ ~~the morning~~ ~~six o'clock~~ the afternoon
Monday the evening Tuesday morning half past ten
midday Friday afternoon midnight the week
night the weekend Saturday evening

on	in	at
Sunday	*the morning*	*six o'clock*

b CD2 ▸ 28 **PRONUNCIATION**
Listen and practise.

2 **a** Fill in the gaps with the correct prepositions.

1 I get up *at* ten o'clock ____ the weekend.
2 Kim goes to bed ____ ten thirty ____ the week.
3 My wife and I go shopping ____ Saturday.
4 Andy has dinner ____ eight o'clock ____ Sunday.
5 We watch TV ____ the evening.
6 My father plays tennis ____ Saturday afternoon.
7 Gary works ____ night and he gets home ____ seven thirty ____ the morning.
8 We play football ____ ten o'clock ____ Sunday morning.

b Write four sentences about you and your family. Use time phrases with *on*, *in*, *at*.

c Work in pairs. Take turns to say your sentences.

Lunch on Monday

3 **a** CD2 ▸ 29 Look at the photo of Carol, Tom and Nadine. Then listen to their conversation. Choose the correct words in these sentences.

1 Carol has *an espresso* / *a cappuccino*.
2 Nadine *works* / *doesn't work* with Tom.
3 She studies English and *Italian* / *French*.
4 She's from *France* / *Germany*.
5 She lives with *two* / *three* other people.

b Listen again. Answer these questions.

1 Does Tom know Nadine?
No, he doesn't.
2 Where does Nadine work at the weekend?
3 What does she do in the week?
4 Where does she live in Manchester?
5 Does she like Manchester?
6 What does she do in her free time?

c Work in pairs. Compare answers.



HELP WITH GRAMMAR Present Simple (*he*, *she*, *it*): questions and short answers

4 **a** Look at these questions. Notice the word order.

***WH-* QUESTIONS (?)**

Where	**does**	Nadine	**work**	at the weekend?
What	**does**	she	**do**	in the week?

TIP • Present Simple questions are the same for *he*, *she* and *it*.

b Write these questions in the table.

1 Where **does** she **live** in Manchester?
2 What **does** she **do** in her free time?

c Fill in the gaps with *does* or *doesn't*.

YES / NO QUESTIONS (?)	SHORT ANSWERS
Does he know Nadine?	Yes, he _____ . No, he doesn't.
_____ she like Manchester?	Yes, she does. No, she _____ .

d Fill in the gaps in these rules with *do* or *does*.

- We use _____ in questions with *he*, *she* and *it*.
- We use _____ in questions with *I*, *you*, *we* and *they*.

GRAMMAR 5.2 p123

5 CD2 30 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the questions and short answers in **4**.

HELP WITH LISTENING Sentence stress (1)

6 **a** CD2 31 Listen to these questions. Notice the sentence stress. We stress the important words.

Where does Tom live?
Does he work with Nadine?
Does Nadine like Manchester?
What does she do in the week?
Does she go to the cinema a lot?
What does Tom do?

b Listen again. Is *does* stressed in questions?

7 **a** CD2 31 PRONUNCIATION Listen again and practise.

b Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions in **6a**.

Where does Tom live? — In Manchester.

8 Work in the same pairs. Student A p89. Student B p94.

Get ready … Get it right!

9 **a** Work in new pairs. Tell your partner your best friend's name. Is your friend male or female?

b Work on your own. Write five questions with *does* to ask your partner about his or her best friend. Use these ideas or your own.

live work study
food and drink
daily routine
free time activities
things he / she likes
things he / she has

Where does Cecilia live?
Does she study English?
What food does she like?



10 **a** Work with your partner from **9a**. Ask and answer your questions. Ask more questions if possible.

Where does Cecilia live?
She lives in Lima, in Peru.

b Tell the class two things about your partner's best friend.

5C REAL WORLD An evening out

Vocabulary food and drink (3)
Real World in a restaurant

QUICK REVIEW Present Simple questions Work in pairs. Ask questions to find three things that you and your partner do at the same time of day: **A** *What time do you get up?* **B** *At half past seven.* **A** *Me too. / I get up at six.*



What's on the menu?

1 **a** Work in pairs. Look at the restaurant menu. Match photos 1–10 to the food and drink on the menu.

b CD2 32 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise.

2 Work in new pairs. Take turns to choose food and drink from the menu. Ask your partner the price.

How much is a chicken salad and an orange juice?

Nine pounds seventy-five.

Are you ready to order?

3 **a** VIDEO 5 CD2 33 Martin and Louise are in The Sunrise Restaurant. Watch or listen to their conversation with the waiter. Tick (✓) the food and drink they order on the menu.

b Work in pairs. Compare answers. How much is the bill?

The SUNRISE Restaurant

MAIN COURSES

chicken salad	£7.25
vegetable lasagne	£7.95
burger and chips	£6.85
mushroom pizza	£7.45

DESSERTS

apple pie and cream	£3.95
fruit salad	£3.50
chocolate, strawberry or vanilla ice cream	£3.25

DRINKS

bottle of mineral water (still or sparkling)	£3.25
orange juice	£2.50
coffee	£2.25
tea	£1.95


1


2


3


4


5


6


7



REAL WORLD In a restaurant

4 **a** VIDEO 5 CD2 33 Watch or listen again. Tick the customers' sentences when you hear them.

WAITER	CUSTOMERS
Are you ready to order?	Yes. Can I have (the chicken salad), please? And can I have (the mushroom pizza)?
Certainly.	
What would you like to drink?	(An orange juice) for me, please. And can we have (a bottle of mineral water)?
Still or sparkling?	Sparkling, please.
OK. Thanks very much.	
Would you like a dessert?	Not for me, thanks. (The apple pie) for me, please. And (two coffees), please.
Of course.	
Of course.	Excuse me. Can we have the bill, please?
	Thanks a lot.

b Read the conversations again. Find:

1 two questions with *can I have … .*
2 two questions with *can we have … .*
3 two questions with *would you like … .*

REAL WORLD 5.1 p123

5 **a** CD2 34 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the sentences in **4a**.

b Work in groups of three. Practise the conversations in **4a**. Take turns to be the waiter or waitress.

6 **a** Work in the same groups. Write a conversation between a waiter or a waitress and two customers at The Sunrise Restaurant. Use language from **4a** and food and drink from the menu.

b Practise your conversation until you can remember it.

c Role-play your conversation for the class. Listen to other groups' conversations. What do they order?

8



9



10



5D VOCABULARY AND SKILLS A day off

Vocabulary frequency adverbs and phrases with *every*
Skills Reading and Listening: our Sunday routines; Listening: I love Sundays

QUICK REVIEW Food and drink (3) Work in pairs. Write all the food and drink on the menu at The Sunrise Restaurant. Check your list with another pair. Then check on the menu on p42.

1 **a** Look at these frequency adverbs. Fill in the gaps with *sometimes*, *usually* and *not usually*.

always ——— ——— ——— never
100% 0%

b Put these phrases with *every* in order.

every day 1 | every year | every month | every week

c What other time words or phrases do we use with *every*?

every morning *every Sunday*

d CD2 35 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise.

I always get up early on Sundays. I never have breakfast because I play football every Sunday morning. I get home at about half past twelve and then I have a big lunch. I don't usually go out in the afternoon, I usually watch sport on TV or read the paper. Then I sometimes sleep for an hour or two. And Becky and I have dinner together at the same restaurant every Sunday evening. Yes, I love my Sunday routine!


Ian

I'm always tired on Sundays because I work in a hotel every Saturday. So on Sunday mornings I always have breakfast in bed and I never get up before midday! And in the afternoon I usually phone my sister, Amy. She lives in San Francisco, in the USA. And in the evening Ian and I always have dinner at a restaurant called The Sunrise. It's not usually very busy on Sundays and the food there is fantastic!


Becky

2 **a** Check these words with your teacher.

early late tired
busy together

b CD2 36 Read and listen to Ian and Becky's Sunday routines. What do they always do together on Sundays?

3 **a** Read about Ian and Becky again. Tick (✓) the true sentences. Correct the wrong sentences.

never
1 Ian ~~always~~ has breakfast on Sundays.
2 He plays football on Sunday mornings. ✓
3 He gets home at about 1.30.
4 He doesn't usually go out in the afternoon.
5 He always sleeps for an hour or two.
6 Becky works in a hotel every Sunday.
7 She has breakfast in bed every Sunday.
8 Her sister lives in the UK.
9 The Sunrise Restaurant is always very busy on Sundays.

b Work in pairs. Compare answers.

HELP WITH VOCABULARY
Frequency adverbs and phrases with *every*

4 Read these rules and the examples.

- **Frequency adverbs** go after ***be***:
  I'**m always** tired on Sundays.
  It'**s not usually** very busy.
- **Frequency adverbs** go before other **verbs**:
  I **never have** breakfast.
  I **usually watch** sport on TV.
- **Phrases with *every*** are usually at the end of the sentence:
  I work in a hotel **every Saturday**.
  I play football **every Sunday morning**.

TIP • We can say: *I'm always tired on Sunday / Sundays*.

VOCABULARY 5.4 p122

5 **a** Make sentences with these words.

1 usually / o'clock / I / at / get up / seven .
I usually get up at seven o'clock.
2 at / eat out / the weekend / sometimes / I .
3 very / 'm / week / always / the / I / in / busy .
4 on / I / Saturdays / usually / work / don't .
5 get up / never / I / the weekend / early / at .
6 tired / I / on / usually / 'm / Mondays .

b Work in pairs. Compare answers. Which sentences are true for you?



6 **a** CD2 37 Look at the photo of Becky's sister, Amy, and her friend Bruce. Then listen to their conversation about Amy's Sunday routine. Tick (✓) the things they talk about.

- breakfast
- homework
- a concert
- shopping
- children
- DVDs
- phone calls
- lunch
- dinner

b Listen again. Choose the correct answers.

1 Amy always gets up at (7) / *8* o'clock on Sundays.
2 She has breakfast with her *husband* / *friends*.
3 They always have eggs, orange juice and *tea* / *coffee*.
4 Amy usually talks to Becky for *30* / *60* minutes.
5 Amy has a Spanish class on *Tuesdays* / *Thursdays*.
6 Amy and Lucas usually have lunch with *Amy's* / *Lucas's* parents.

HELP WITH LISTENING Sentence stress (2)

7 **a** CD2 38 Read and listen to these sentences. Notice the stress. We stress the important words.

I always have breakfast with my husband, Lucas.
Yes, I go to a class every Thursday evening.
And we usually go to Lucas's parents for lunch.
And we watch a DVD every Sunday evening.

b Look at Audio Script CD2 37 p110. Listen to the conversation again. Follow the sentence stress.

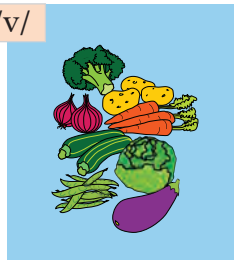
8 **a** Write two true sentences and two false sentences about your Sunday routine.

b Work in pairs. Take turns to say your sentences. Guess if your partner's sentences are true or false.

HELP WITH PRONUNCIATION /w/ and /v/

1 CD2 39 Look at the pictures. Listen to the sounds and words. Listen again and practise.

/w/ 
waiter

/v/ 
vegetables

2 CD2 40 Listen to these words. Notice how we say *w* and *v* in these words. Listen again and practise.

/w/	/v/
waiter always	vegetables very
women when work	evening never live
where Wednesday	every vocabulary
week weekend twelve	five seven eleven

3 **a** CD2 41 Listen to the conversation. Listen again and practise.

A Where do you work?
B I'm a waiter and I work in a very nice café in Vienna.
A When do you work?
B I work every evening from five to eleven in the week.
A Do you work at the weekend?
B Yes, I work seven days a week.

b Work in pairs. Practise the conversation.

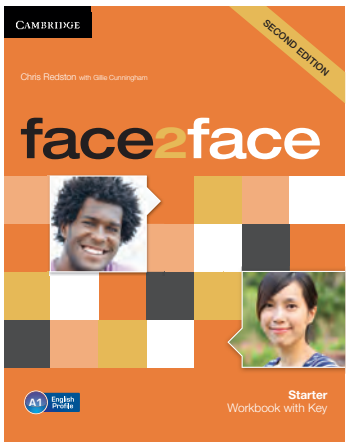
continue2learn

Vocabulary, Grammar and Real World

- **Extra Practice 5 and Progress Portfolio 5** p101
- **Language Summary 5** p122
- **5A–D** Workbook p23

Reading and Writing

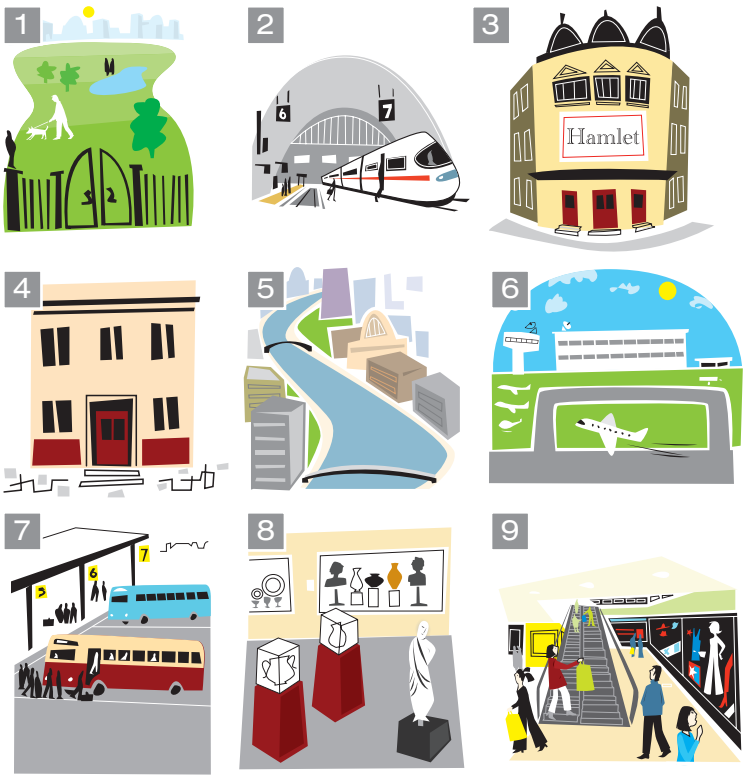
- **Portfolio 5** My best friend Workbook p60
  Reading best friends
  Writing *because* and *also*; my best friend



6A My home town

Vocabulary places in a town or city (1)
Grammar *a, some, a lot of*; *there is / there are*: positive

QUICK REVIEW Present Simple and frequency adverbs Write sentences about things that you: always, usually, sometimes, never do on Saturday. Work in pairs. Tell your partner your sentences: **A** *I always get up late on Saturday.* **B** *Me too. / I usually get up early.*



Places in a town or city (1)

1 a Match these words to pictures 1–9.

a building 4 a museum ☐ a theatre ☐
a shopping centre ☐ a park ☐ a river ☐
a station ☐ a bus station ☐ an airport ☐

b CD2 43 **PRONUNCIATION** Listen and practise.

c Work in pairs. Cover **1a**. Then test your partner.

What's number 2? It's a station.

My city

2 a Check these words with your teacher.

famous great hot springs
swim a train a mile

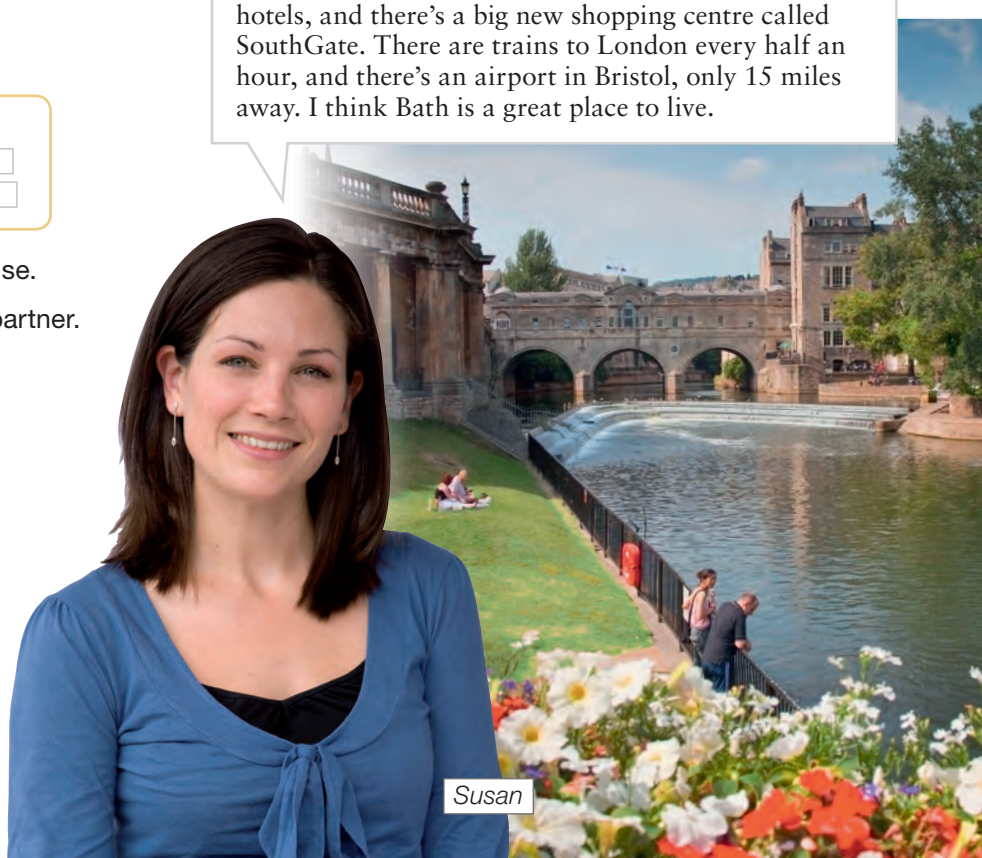
b Look at the photos of Bath, a city in England. What can you see in the photos?

3 a CD2 44 Read and listen to Susan. Does she like living in Bath?

b Read about Bath again. Tick (✓) the true sentences. Correct the false sentences.

1 Bath is in ~~the USA~~. *England*
2 It's a very beautiful city. ✓
3 Susan goes to the Thermae Bath Spa every Friday.
4 There are five theatres in Bath.
5 The Jane Austen Centre is a theatre.
6 SouthGate is a big shopping centre.
7 There are trains to London every 15 minutes.
8 Bath doesn't have an airport.

I live in Bath, a city in England. It's a very beautiful place. There are a lot of old buildings in the centre and there are some very nice parks. Bath is famous for its hot springs, and you can swim in the hot water at the Thermae Bath Spa. I go there every Sunday, it's great! In the centre of Bath there are five theatres and some very good museums, including the Roman Baths and the Jane Austen Centre, about the famous English writer. There are also a lot of good restaurants and hotels, and there's a big new shopping centre called SouthGate. There are trains to London every half an hour, and there's an airport in Bristol, only 15 miles away. I think Bath is a great place to live.


Susan

HELP WITH GRAMMAR

a, *some*, *a lot of*; *there is* / *there are*: positive

4 **a** Match sentences 1–3 to pictures A–C.

1 There's **a person** in the park.
2 There are **some people** in the park.
3 There are **a lot of people** in the park.



b Fill in the gaps with *'s* (= *is*) or *are*.

POSITIVE (+)

SINGULAR	There _____ **a** big new shopping centre. There _____ **an** airport in Bristol.
PLURAL	There _____ **five** theatres. There _____ **some** very nice parks. There _____ **a lot of** old buildings.

GRAMMAR 6.1 p125



5 **a** Look at these sentences about Bath. Fill in the gaps with *'s* or *are*.

1 There *'s* a beautiful river.
2 There _____ two cinemas.
3 There _____ a bus station.
4 There _____ some hot springs.
5 There _____ a nice café near the station.
6 There _____ two five-star hotels.
7 There _____ a famous restaurant called Sally Lunn's.
8 There _____ a lot of trains to London every day.

b CD2 45 Listen and check. Notice how we say *there's* and *there are*.

There's /ðeəz/ a beautiful river.
There are /ðeərə/ two cinemas.

c PRONUNCIATION Listen again and practise.

6 **a** Choose the correct words.

1 There's (*a*) / *some* station.
2 There are *a* / *three* parks.
3 There are *a* / *some* good museums.
4 There's *a* / *some* bus station.
5 There are *some* / *a* beautiful buildings.
6 There's *a* / *an* old theatre.
7 There are *an* / *a lot of* very good restaurants.
8 There's *an* / *some* airport.
9 There are *some* / *a* nice hotels.
10 There's *a* / *a lot of* river.

b Work in pairs. Compare answers. Which sentences are true for the town or city you are in now?

Get ready … Get it right!

7 Write sentences about a town or city you know (not the town or city you're in now). Use *there is*, *there are* and words from **1a**.

In … there are a lot of nice cafés.
There are some interesting museums.
There's a new shopping centre.

8 **a** Work in pairs. Tell your partner about your town or city in **7**.

b Tell the class two things about your partner's town or city.

6B Are there any shops?

Vocabulary places in a town or city (2)
Grammar *there is* / *there are*: negative, *yes* / *no* questions and short answers; *any*

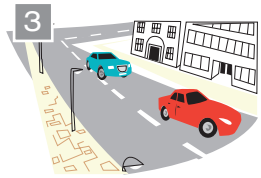
QUICK REVIEW there is / there are Work in pairs. Say sentences about the town or city you are in now. Use *there is* and *there are*: **A** *There are some good restaurants in the centre.* **B** *Yes, and there's a nice park.*

Places in a town or city (2)

1 a Work in pairs. Match these words to pictures 1–9.

a road 3 a bank ☐ a market ☐
a chemist's ☐ a post office ☐
a supermarket ☐ a bus stop ☐
a square ☐ a cashpoint / an ATM ☐











b CD2 ▸ 46 **PRONUNCIATION** Listen and practise.

c Work with your partner. Close your books. How many places in a town or city do you remember?

Welcome to my home

2 a CD2 ▸ 47 Look at the photo of Susan and her friend, Isabel. Listen to their conversation. Put these things in the order they talk about them.

- Susan's flat *1*
- restaurants
- shops
- trains and buses
- banks

b Listen again. Choose the correct words.

1 Susan *likes* / *doesn't like* living in her flat.
2 There are *some* / *a lot of* shops in Susan's road.
3 There's a cashpoint at the *supermarket* / *post office*.
4 It's *a mile* / *two miles* to the centre of Bath.
5 There are buses to the centre of Bath every *ten* / *twenty* minutes.
6 There's a *station* / *bus stop* near the post office.
7 There are some very nice restaurants *near Susan's house* / *in the centre*.

c Work in pairs. Compare answers.



HELP WITH GRAMMAR *there is / there are*: negative, *yes / no* questions and short answers; *any*

3 **a** Fill in the gaps with *aren't* or *isn't*.

NEGATIVE (–)

1 There _____ a station near here.
2 There _____ any good restaurants near here.

b Fill in the gaps with *is*, *are*, *isn't* or *aren't*.

YES / NO QUESTIONS (?)	SHORT ANSWERS
Is there a bank?	Yes, there _____ . No, there _____ .
_____ there any shops?	Yes, there _____ . No, there _____ .

c Look again at the sentences in **3a** and **3b**. Then choose the correct word in this rule.

- We use *some* / *any* in negatives and questions with *there are*.

GRAMMAR 6.2 p125

HELP WITH LISTENING Linking (1)

4 CD2 48 Listen to these sentences. Notice the linking between the **consonant** sounds and the **vowel** sounds.

1 There's an expensive market.
2 There are some old buildings.
3 There isn't an airport.
4 There aren't any museums.
5 Is there a post office?
6 Are there any nice old cafés?

5 CD2 49 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the sentences in **4** and the short answers.

There's an expensive market.

6 **a** Write sentences about places near Susan's flat.

1 (✓) a supermarket
There's a supermarket.
2 (✗) a shopping centre
There isn't a shopping centre.
3 (✓) a market
4 (✗) any museums
5 (✓) a park
6 (✗) a square
7 (✗) any nice cafés
8 (✓) a lot of old houses

b Work in pairs. Compare answers.

7 Work in the same pairs. Student A p86. Student B p91.

Get ready … Get it right!

8 Write eight questions to ask another student about places near his or her home. Use the words on the map (a cinema, hotels, etc.), *Is there a … ?* and *Are there any … ?*.

Is there a cinema near your home?
Are there any hotels?



9 **a** Work in pairs. Take turns to ask your questions from **8**. Make notes on your partner's answers. Give more information about places near your home if possible.

Is there a cinema near your home? — Yes, there is. It's five minutes away.

Are there any hotels? — No, there aren't.

b Work in new pairs. Talk about places near your first partner's home.

There's a cinema near Gabi's home, but there aren't any hotels.

c Tell the class about one interesting place near your partner's home.

6C REAL WORLD Tourist information



Vocabulary things in your bag (2)
Real World at a tourist information centre

QUICK REVIEW Places in a town or city Write ten words for places in a town or city (*a square*, etc.). Work in pairs. Compare lists. Which places are near your school?



Things in your bag (2)

1 **a** Work in pairs. Match these words to things 1–11.

a wallet 8 a purse ☐ keys ☐ money ☐
a credit card ☐ a passport ☐ an ID card ☐
a guide book ☐ a map ☐ a camera ☐
a laptop ☐

b CD2 50 **PRONUNCIATION** Listen and practise.

c Work in new pairs. Which things in **1a** do you have with you?

I have some money with me. Yes, me too.

When is it open?

2 **a** Check these words with your teacher.

a tourist an art gallery open
closed book a walking tour

b VIDEO 6 CD2 51 Martin and Louise are at the tourist information centre in Cambridge. Watch or listen to their conversation. Put photos A–C in order.

3 VIDEO 6 CD2 51 Watch or listen again. Choose the correct answers.

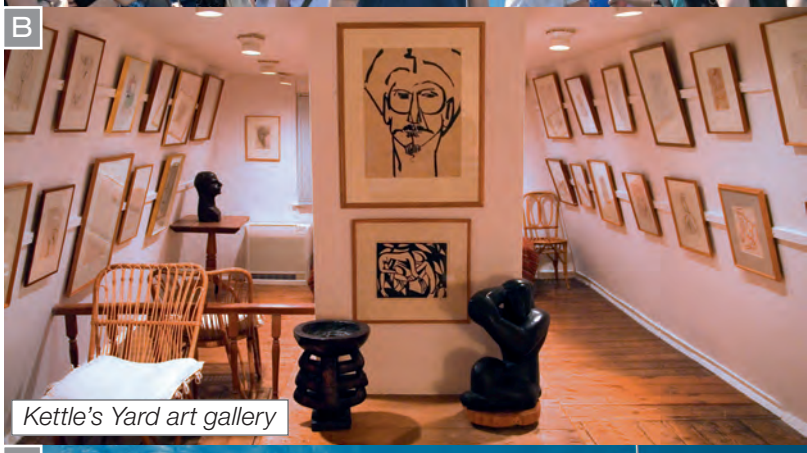
1 Martin wants a *map* / *guide book* of Cambridge.
2 Kettle's Yard art gallery is open from *10.30* / *11.30* a.m. to *5* / *6* p.m.
3 The gallery is *open* / *closed* on Mondays.
4 The Fitzwilliam Museum is about *5* / *10* minutes away.
5 The walking tours start at *10* / *11* a.m. and *1* / *2* p.m.
6 They are *£7.50* / *£17.50* per person.

A



a walking tour

B



Kettle's Yard art gallery

C



the Fitzwilliam Museum



REAL WORLD At a tourist information centre

4 Read these conversations. Fill in the gaps with these words.

~~help~~ book have start map closed open

ASSISTANT

Hello. Can I [1] *help* you?

Yes, of course. Here you are.

It's [3]_____ from (11.30) a.m. to (5) p.m.

No, it's [4]_____ on Mondays.

It's in (Trumpington Street).

Yes, of course. Here it is. It's about (five) minutes away.

Yes, they [7]_____ at (11 a.m. and 1 p.m.) every day.

They're (£17.50) per person.

TOURIST

Yes, please. Do you [2]_____ a (map of Cambridge city centre)?

When is (Kettle's Yard art gallery) open?

Is it open every day?

Where's the (Fitzwilliam Museum)?

Can you show me on this [5]_____?

Can we [6]_____ a walking tour here?

How much are they?

REAL WORLD 6.1 ▸ p125

5 **a** CD2 ▸ 52 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the sentences in **4**.

Hello. Can I help you?

b Work in pairs. Practise the conversations in **4**. Take turns to be the tourist.

6 **a** Choose the correct words or phrases in these conversations.

1

ASSISTANT Hello. [1]*I can* / *Can I* help you?
TOURIST Yes, please. [2]*When* / *Where* is the Sedgwick Museum open?
A It's open today [3]*from* / *to* 10 a.m. [4]*from* / *to* 4 p.m.
T [5]*Is it* / *Is* open every day?
A No, it's closed [6]*in* / *on* Sundays.
T OK, thanks. And [7]*where's* / *there's* the ADC Theatre?
A It's [8]*in* / *at* Park Street.
T Can you show me on this [9]*card* / *map*?
A Yes, of course. [10]*Here is it.* / *Here it is.* It's about ten minutes away.

2

T Good [11]*afternoon* / *night*. Do you have a map [12]*in* / *of* the UK?
A Yes, [13]*here you are* / *here are you*.
T Thank you. And can I [14]*make* / *book* a bus tour here?
A Yes, they start [15]*at* / *on* 10 a.m. and 2 p.m. every [16]*day* / *days*.
T How much [17]*is* / *are* they?
A They're £17.50 per [18]*person* / *people*.
T OK. Thanks a lot. Goodbye.

b CD2 ▸ 53 Listen and check.

c Work in pairs. Practise the conversations in **6a**. Take turns to be the tourist.

7 **a** Work in new pairs. Imagine you are in a tourist information centre in the town or city you are in now. Write a conversation between a tourist and an assistant. Use language from **4** and your own ideas.

b Practise your conversation until you can remember it.

c Work in groups of four with another pair. Take turns to role-play your conversations. What does the tourist ask about?

6D VOCABULARY AND SKILLS

It's my favourite

Vocabulary clothes, colours, *favourite*
Skills Listening: my clothes; Reading: my favourite places

QUICK REVIEW Things in your bag Work in pairs. What things do you both have with you today?
A *Do you have any keys with you?* **B** *Yes, I do.* **A** *Me too.* **B** *Do you have a laptop with you?*



1 **a** Work in pairs. Look at the photos of Wayne, Monica, Brad and Lisa. Match these words to clothes 1–14.

a suit 3 | a tie | a shirt | a T-shirt | a jumper
a jacket | a coat | a skirt | a dress
trousers | jeans | shoes | trainers | boots

b CD2 54 **PRONUNCIATION** Listen and practise.

c Work in new pairs. Test your partner.

What's number 1? It's a shirt.

2 CD2 55 **PRONUNCIATION** Listen and practise these colours.



3 **a** Look at the photos for two minutes. Remember the people's names, their clothes and the colours.

b Work in pairs. Student A, close your book. Student B, ask what colour the people's clothes are. Then change roles.

What colour are Monica's boots? They're black.

4 **a** CD2 56 Look again at the photos. Listen and put the people in the order you hear them.

b Listen again. What does each person never wear?

5 **a** Which clothes and colours do you: usually wear, sometimes wear, never wear? Write three lists.

b Work in groups. Tell other students about the things on your lists.

I usually wear a T-shirt and jeans.
I sometimes wear boots. I never wear pink.

HELP WITH VOCABULARY *favourite*

6 **a** Fill in the gaps with *This*, *These*, *My*, *Who* or *What*.

1 _____ favourite colour is pink.
2 _____ is my favourite jacket.
3 _____ are my favourite boots.
4 _____'s your favourite colour?
5 _____'s your favourite actor?

b CD2 57 **PRONUNCIATION** Listen and practise.

VOCABULARY 6.6 p125

7 **a** Read the blog. Fill in the gaps with these words.

clothes shop café restaurant

www.itsmyfavourite.net

My favourite places

My favourite [1]_____ is *Happy Days*, in Los Angeles, California. They have fantastic main courses and salads, and their cheeseburgers are famous all over the city. And for dessert, I always have their apple pie and vanilla ice cream. It's delicious! **TYRONE**





My favourite [2]_____ is called *Francesca's*. It's in Covent Garden market in the centre of London. They sell beautiful dresses, trousers, jackets, jumpers and skirts, and they aren't very expensive. I go shopping there every weekend with my friends. **SUNEE**

My favourite [3]_____ is called *The Kangaroo* in Melbourne, Australia. I go there for breakfast every morning on my way to work. It has great coffee, delicious hot croissants and very good sandwiches. The waiters are very friendly and they always play great music. **KEIRA**



b Read the blog again. Answer these questions.

1 Are the cheeseburgers at *Happy Days* famous?
2 What does Tyrone always have for dessert?
3 Are the clothes at Francesca's very expensive?
4 When does Sunee go shopping there?
5 When does Keira go to *The Kangaroo*?
6 Are the waiters very friendly?

8 **a** Write six questions with *your favourite*. Use these ideas or your own.

food actor musician drink
restaurant actress band café
singer colour day sport

What's your favourite food?
Who's your favourite actor?

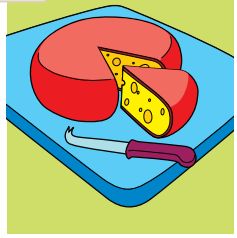
b Work in pairs. Take turns to ask your questions.

c Tell the class two things about your partner.

HELP WITH PRONUNCIATION /tʃ/ and /dʒ/

1 CD2 58 Look at the pictures. Listen to the sounds and words. Listen again and practise.

/tʃ/



cheese

/dʒ/



orange juice

2 CD2 59 Listen to these words. Notice how we say the **pink** and **blue** letters. Listen again and practise.

/tʃ/	/dʒ/
cheese **ch**eap mu**ch**	oran**g**e juice **j**eans
chips **ch**ocolate **ch**icken	**j**umper **j**acket mana**g**er
children pic**t**ure	pa**g**e **j**ob vege**t**ables
sandwi**ch** Fren**ch**	langua**g**e Japanese

3 **a** A lot of English first names start with /dʒ/. Work in pairs. How do we say these names?

male: **J**ack **J**ohn **J**ames **J**im **J**ason **J**eremy **J**oe **J**ustin **G**eoff **G**eorge

female: **J**ane **J**an **J**essica **J**enny **J**ulia **J**uliet **J**oanna **J**ill **G**illian **G**ina

b CD2 60 Listen and check. Listen again and practise.

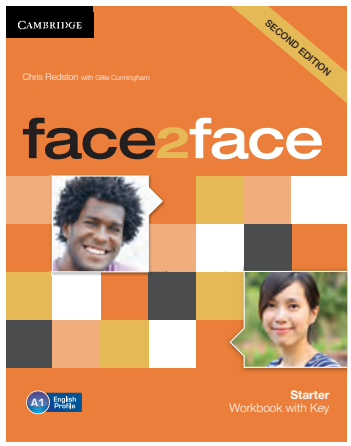
continue2learn

Vocabulary, Grammar and Real World

- **Extra Practice 6 and Progress Portfolio 6** p102
- **Language Summary 6** p124
- **6A–D** Workbook p28

Reading and Writing

- **Portfolio 6** A tourist in London Workbook p62
  Reading a newspaper article
  Writing describing places; places for tourists in your town or city



7A We're twins

Vocabulary things you like and don't like; *love, like, don't like, hate*
Grammar object pronouns

QUICK REVIEW Favourite What's your favourite: city, sport, shop, film, book, colour? Work in groups. Tell the other students your favourite things. Are any the same? **A** *My favourite city is Paris*. **B** *Me too*. **C** *My favourite city is Rome*.



Things you like and don't like

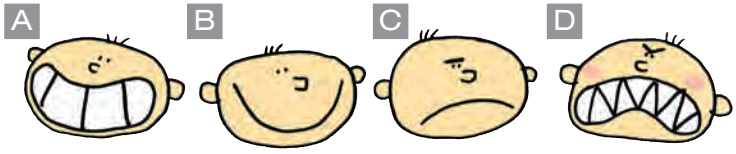
1 **a** Work in pairs. Match these words and phrases to pictures 1–9.

soap operas 7 | visiting new places ☐ | classical music ☐
flying ☐ | dancing ☐ | watching sport on TV ☐ | animals ☐
horror films ☐ | shopping for clothes ☐

b CD2 61 **PRONUNCIATION** Listen and practise.

2 Match these phrases to pictures A–D.

I like … | I hate … | I don't like … | I love …



HELP WITH VOCABULARY
love, like, don't like, hate

3 **a** Look at these sentences. After *love*, *like*, *don't like* and *hate* we can use a **noun** or **verb+*ing***.

I love **animals**.
I like **soap operas**.
I don't like **dancing**.
I hate **shopping** for clothes.

b Find all the **verb+*ing*** words in **1a**.

c Look at how we make **verb+*ing*** words in VOCABULARY 7.2 p126.

4 **a** Write the verb+*ing* forms of the verbs in brackets.

1 I love *playing* tennis. (play)
2 I like _____ a sister. (have)
3 I hate _____ to concerts. (go)
4 I don't like _____ early. (get up)
5 I like _____ in the afternoon. (sleep)
6 I love _____ in this town/city. (live)

b Work in pairs. Compare answers. Are any of these sentences true for you?

5 **a** Write three true sentences and three false sentences about things you love, like, don't like and hate. Use words and phrases from **1a** or your own ideas.

I love going to museums.
I don't like soap operas.

b Work in pairs. Say your sentences. Guess if your partner's sentences are true or false.

I love going to museums.
I think that's true.
No, it's false!

We're very different

6 **a** Check these words with your teacher.

twins | different | similar
the same | both

b Do you know any twins? If so, tell the class about them (names, age, jobs, family, etc.).



Hugo and I are twins, but our friends tell **us** we're very different. We never go to concerts together because I like classical music and Hugo loves rock music. And Hugo doesn't like horror films, but I love them. We both like watching TV, but I love watching sport and Hugo hates it. But I love having a twin brother. I don't see **him** very often, but he phones **me** every weekend.

Adam

Our mum says Adam and I are very similar, but I don't agree with **her**. Adam and I both like watching TV, but I love soap operas and he hates **them**. We don't often eat out together because I like Mexican food and he loves Japanese food. And I don't like flying, but Adam loves **it**. I know we don't like the same things, but I love having a twin brother!

Hugo

7 **a** CD2 62 Read and listen to Adam and Hugo. Find two things they both like.

b Read about Adam and Hugo again. Fill in the gaps in these sentences with *Adam* or *Hugo*.

1 *Adam* likes classical music.
2 _____ likes horror films.
3 _____ hates watching sport on TV.
4 _____ hates soap operas.
5 _____ likes Mexican food.
6 _____ doesn't like flying.
7 _____ phones _____ every weekend.

HELP WITH GRAMMAR Object pronouns

8 **a** Look at these sentences. Notice the word order.

subject	verb	object
I	love	soap operas.
Adam	hates	them.

b Look again at the texts about Adam and Hugo. Fill in the table with the object pronouns in **blue**.

subject pronouns	I	you	he	she	it	we	they
object pronouns	____	you	____	____	____	____	____

GRAMMAR 7.1 p127

9 **a** Fill in the gaps with object pronouns.

1 A Do you like studying English?
B Yes, I love *it*.
2 A Do you like Lady Gaga?
B Yes, I like _____ a lot.
3 A Do you like getting up early?
B No, I hate _____ .
4 A Do you like Johnny Depp?
B Yes, I love _____ !
5 A Do you like soap operas?
B No, I hate _____ .
6 A Do you like dogs?
B Yes, but they don't like _____ !

b CD2 63 PRONUNCIATION Listen and check. Listen again and practise.

c Work in pairs. Take turns to ask the questions in **9a**. Answer for you.

10 **a** Write five questions about Adam and Hugo with *Does … like … ?*

Does Adam like rock music?

b Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions.

Get ready … Get it right!

11 Work in new pairs. Student A p86. Student B p91.

7B Can you drive?

Vocabulary abilities
Grammar *can* for ability

QUICK REVIEW Things you like Work in pairs. Ask questions and find four things you both like:
A *Do you like cats?* **B** *Yes, I do. / No, I don't.*
Do you like flying? **A** *Yes, I love it. / No, I hate it.*

Abilities

1 **a** Match these words and phrases to pictures 1–10.

swim 4 cook ☐ drive ☐ ride a bike ☐
play basketball ☐ play the piano ☐ sing ☐
play the guitar ☐ speak German ☐ ski ☐



b CD2 64 **PRONUNCIATION** Listen and practise.

c Work in pairs. Mime activities from **1a**. Guess your partner's activities.

I can't swim!

2 Match sentences 1–4 to pictures A–D.

1 Help! I can't swim!
2 She can play the piano.
3 Sorry, we can't speak Chinese.
4 They can ski very well.



HELP WITH GRAMMAR *can*: positive and negative

3 We use *can* or *can't* to talk about ability. Look at these sentences. Then read the rule.

POSITIVE (+)

She	**can**	**play**	the piano.
They	**can**	**ski**.	

NEGATIVE (–)

I	**can't**	**swim**.	
We	**can't**	**speak**	Chinese.

- *Can* and *can't* are the same for *I*, *you*, *he*, *she*, *it*, *we* and *they*.

TIP • We sometimes use ***(very) well*** with *can*:
*She can swim **well**. They can ski **very well**.*

GRAMMAR 7.2 p127

HELP WITH LISTENING *can* or *can't*

4 **a** CD2 65 Listen to these sentences. Notice how we say *can* and *can't*. Is *can* stressed? Is *can't* stressed?

Help! I can't /kɑːnt/ swim!
She can /kən/ play the piano.
Sorry, we can't /kɑːnt/ speak Chinese.
They can /kən/ ski very well.

b CD2 66 Listen to six sentences. Do you hear *can* or *can't*?

5 CD2 66 **PRONUNCIATION** Listen again and practise.

I can /kən/ play the guitar.

6 **a** Write three true sentences and three false sentences about you and your family. Use *can* or *can't*.

I can't play the piano.
My brother can speak Japanese very well.

b Work in pairs. Say your sentences. Guess if your partner's sentences are true or false.

Help with the children

7 **a** CD2 67 Look at the photo. Mrs Taylor wants an au pair to help with her children, Megan and Harry. Listen to the interview. Does Natalia get the job?

b Listen again. Put a tick (✓) for the things Natalia can do. Put a cross (✗) for the things she can't do.

1	cook ✓	6	play tennis
2	drive	7	play football
3	speak German	8	play the piano
4	speak French	9	sing
5	swim	10	play the guitar

c Work in pairs. Compare answers.

HELP WITH GRAMMAR

can: *yes* / *no* questions and short answers

8 Look at these questions. Then fill in the gaps in the short answers with *can* or *can't*.

YES / *NO* QUESTIONS (?)	SHORT ANSWERS
Can you **cook**?	Yes, I *can* . / No, I _____ .
Can he **play** the guitar?	Yes, he _____ . / No, he _____ .
Can she **speak** French?	Yes, she _____ . / No, she _____ .
Can they **swim**?	Yes, they _____ . / No, they _____ .

GRAMMAR 7.3 p127

9 CD2 68 **PRONUNCIATION** Listen and practise the questions and short answers in **8**.

Can /kən/ you cook? Yes, I can /kæn/.

10 Work in pairs. Student A p90. Student B p95.

Get ready … Get it right!

11 Make a list of things you can do. Use words and phrases from **1a** and your own ideas.

play the guitar

12 **a** Work in new pairs. Ask questions to find things you can both do. Use your list from **11**.

Can you play the guitar? | Yes, I can. / No, I can't.

b Tell the class things you can both do.



7C REAL WORLD Directions



Vocabulary prepositions of place
Real World asking for and giving directions

QUICK REVIEW Abilities and *can* Work in pairs. Find four things you can do, but your partner can't do: A *Can you play the piano?* B *No, I can't.* A *Oh, I can!*

Where's the café?

1 **a** Write ten places in a town or city.

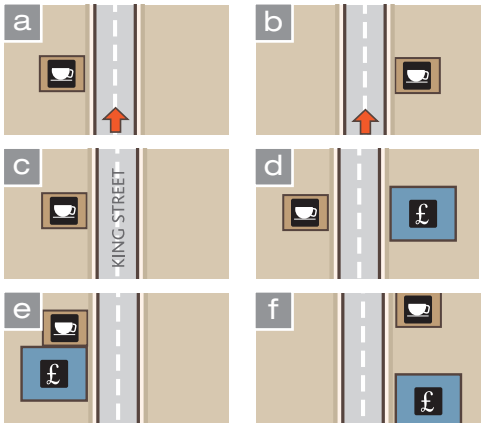
a restaurant *a café*

b Work in groups. Compare lists. Do you have the same places?

HELP WITH VOCABULARY
Prepositions of place

2 Where's the café? Match pictures a–f to sentences 1–6.

1 It's **in** King Street. *c*
2 It's **near** the bank.
3 It's **next to** the bank.
4 It's **opposite** the bank.
5 It's **on** the left.
6 It's **on** the right.



TIP • We can say ***in*** *King Street* or ***on*** *King Street.*

VOCABULARY 7.4 p126

3 **a** CD3 1 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the sentences in **2**.

b Work in pairs. Ask where the café is in pictures a–f.

Where's the café in picture c?

It's in King Street.


Rachel


Jack

It's over there

4 **a** Work in new pairs. Look at the map on p59. What are places 1–12?

b Say where a place is on the map. Your partner guesses the place.

It's in New Road, opposite the park.

The cinema.

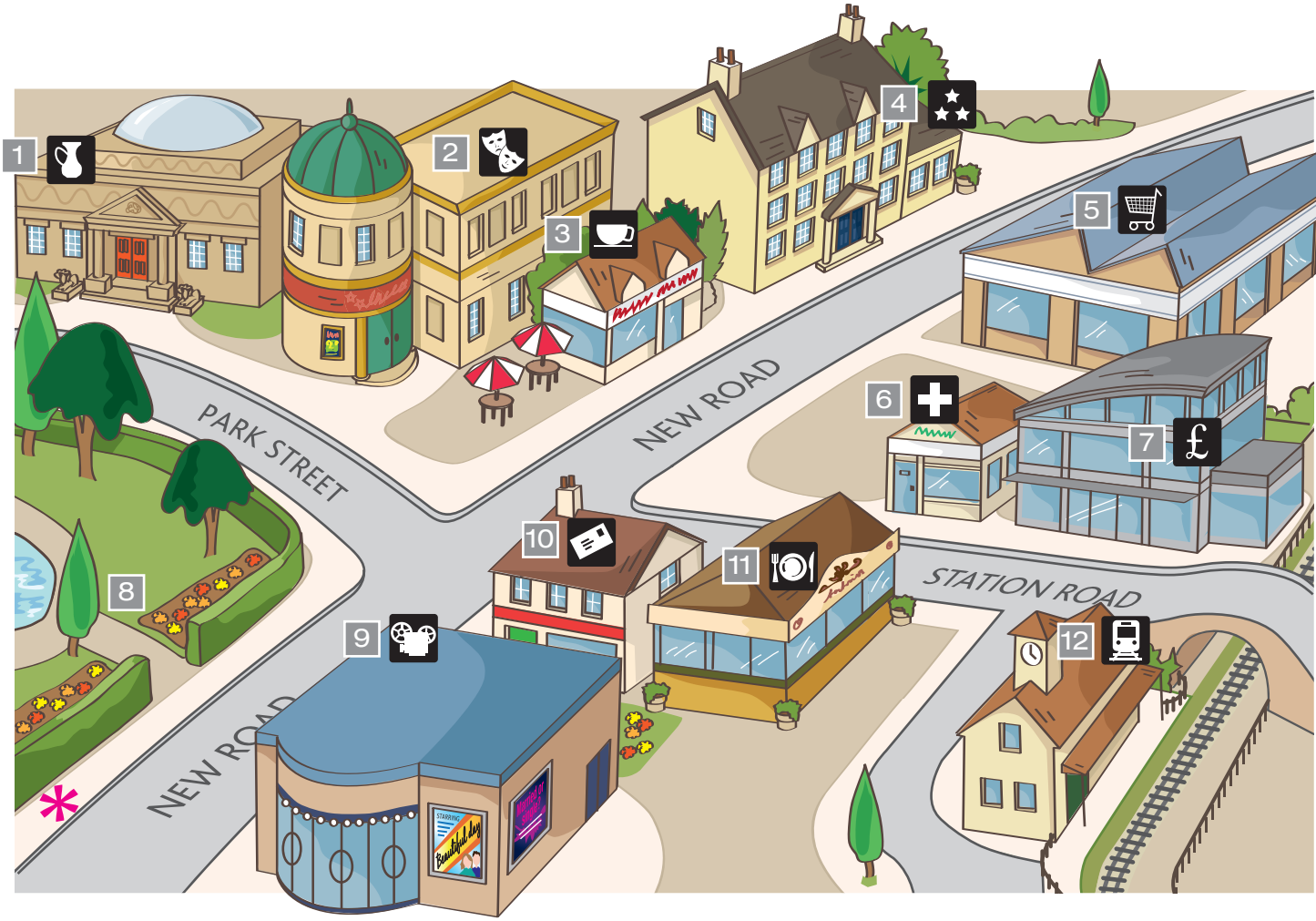
5 **a** VIDEO 7 CD3 2 Look at the photos of Rachel and Jack. They are at ✱ on the map. Then watch or listen. Which places do they want to go to?

b Work in pairs. Look again at the map. Choose the correct words in these conversations.

RACHEL Excuse me. Where's the [1]*museum / station*?
MAN Go along this road and turn left. That's Park Street. The [2]*museum / station* is [3]*on / in* the right, [4]*opposite / next to* the theatre.
R Thanks very much. Oh, and is there a [5]*chemist's / café* near here?
M Yes, there is. Go along this road and it's [6]*at / on* the left, [7]*opposite / next to* the hotel.
R OK. Thanks a lot.
M No problem.

JACK Excuse me. Where's the [8]*theatre / post office*?
WOMAN It's over there, [9]*near / opposite* the cinema.
J Oh, yes. I [10]*can / can't* see it. Thanks.
W You're welcome.
J Also, is there a [11]*supermarket / bank* near here?
W Yes, there's one [12]*in / at* Station Road. Go along this road and turn right. The [13]*supermarket / bank* is on the [14]*left / right*, opposite the station.
J OK, thanks a lot. Bye.

c Watch or listen again. Check your answers.



REAL WORLD

Asking for and giving directions

6 Fill in the gaps with these words.

~~me~~ to turn on road here over

ASKING FOR DIRECTIONS

Excuse [1] *me* . Where's the (museum)?

Excuse me. Is there a (bank) near [2] _____ ?

GIVING DIRECTIONS

Go along this [3] _____ and turn left.

Go along this road and [4] _____ right.

That's (Park Street).

The (museum) is on the right, next [5] _____ the (theatre).

The (bank) is [6] _____ the left, opposite the (station).

It's [7] _____ there, near the (cinema).

REAL WORLD 7.1 ▸ p127

7 **a** CD3 ▸ 3 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the sentences in **6**.

Excuse me. Where's the museum?

b Work in pairs. Practise the conversations in **5b**. Take turns to be Rachel and Jack.

8 **a** Look again at the map. Read these conversations. The people are at * on the map. Choose the correct words.

1

A Excuse [1]*you / me*. Is there a restaurant near [2]*here / there*?

B Yes, there is. Go along this road and turn [3]*left / right*. That's Station Road. The restaurant is [4]*in / on* the right, [5]*near / in* the station.

A Thank you very much.

2

A Excuse me. [6]*Where's / What's* the theatre?

B It's [7]*near / over* there, [8]*opposite / next to* the museum.

A Oh yes. I can see it. Thanks a lot.

B You're welcome.

3

A Excuse me. Is there a supermarket [9]*next to / near* here?

B Yes, there is. Go [10]*to / along* this road. The supermarket is on the [11]*left / right*, opposite the [12]*hotel / café*.

A Thanks a lot.

b CD3 ▸ 4 Listen and check.

c Work in the same pairs. Practise the conversations in **8a**. Take turns to ask for directions.

9 Work in new pairs. You are at * on the map. Ask for directions to places on the map. Are your partner's directions correct?

7D VOCABULARY AND SKILLS — The internet

Vocabulary things people do online
Skills Reading: It's my internet!;
Listening: an internet questionnaire

QUICK REVIEW Directions Write five places (cafés, restaurants, shops, etc.) near your school. Work in pairs. Do you know your partner's places? If not, ask for directions.

1 **a** Work in pairs. Look at these things people do on the internet. Fill in the gaps with these words.

~~send~~ watch chat be
buy read hotels the radio
music information flights

send / **get / receive**	emails
_____ **sell**	things online
_____ **write**	a blog
_____	TV programmes videos
_____	on Facebook on Twitter
download	videos _____ apps
book	_____ holidays _____
listen	to _____ to music
_____	to friends and family
search	for _____

TIPS • *online* = connected to the internet • *a TV programme* (UK) = *a TV show* (US)

b CD3 5 **PRONUNCIATION** Listen and practise the phrases in **1a**.



2 Work in new pairs. What can people do on these websites?

You can book hotels or holidays on lastminute.com.

3 **a** Read about how three people use the internet. Fill in the gaps with *Sunita*, *Brian* and *Millie*.

1 *Millie* works in a restaurant.
2 _____ checks her Facebook page every day.
3 _____ isn't on Facebook or Twitter.
4 _____ watches TV programmes online.
5 _____ uses the internet for directions.
6 _____ chats to her brother online.
7 _____ writes a blog.
8 _____ doesn't buy things online.
9 _____ and _____ buy clothes online.

www.howdoyouusetheinternet.com

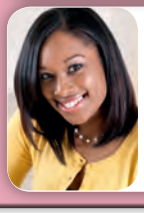
It's my internet!



SUNITA How do I use the internet? Well, I'm on Facebook and I check that every day. I also chat online to my brother a lot – he lives in Australia, you see. I download a lot of music onto my laptop and I watch music videos on YouTube. Oh, and I buy a lot of things online – DVDs, shoes, clothes, books. Yes, I can't live without the internet!



BRIAN I don't use the internet very much. I send and receive emails, of course, but I'm not on Facebook or Twitter. And I sometimes use the internet to search for information, for example, directions to a place I don't know. I also book hotels on the internet, but I never buy things online – I like looking at things before I buy them.



MILLIE I use the internet to write a blog about my life. I'm a waitress in Hollywood and a lot of famous people eat in our restaurant. My blog's very popular, but I don't use my real name. I also watch a lot of TV shows online because I don't have a TV. Oh, and I buy a lot of things online too. I love shopping for clothes on eBay!

b Read about the people again. Underline phrases from **1a**. Then compare with another student.



Internet Questionnaire

A things people do online	B Sam (✓ or ✗)	C your partner (✓ or ✗)
1*watch / listen* TV programmes		
2*watch / listen* to the radio		
3*send / be* on Facebook		
4*download / chat* to friends and family		
buy and 5*search / sell* things		
6*chat / book* flights or holidays		
7*read / watch* blogs		
8*book / download* music		

4 **a** Look at column A in the questionnaire. Choose the correct verbs.

b CD3 6 Look at the photo. Then listen to Sam's interview. Put a tick (✓) or a cross (✗) in column B of the questionnaire.

c Listen again. Answer these questions.

1 Does Sam watch videos online?
2 What's his favourite website?
3 Is he on Twitter?
4 Where does his sister live?
5 What does he buy on Amazon?
6 Is Sam married or single?
7 Where does he listen to music?

5 **a** Work in pairs. Look again at the questionnaire. Interview your partner. Put a tick (✓) or a cross (✗) in column C. Give more information if possible.

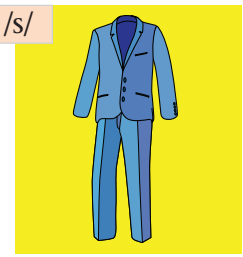
b Work in new pairs. Talk about your partner in **5a**.

c Tell the class two things about your first partner.

HELP WITH PRONUNCIATION /s/ and /ʃ/

1 CD3 7 Look at the pictures. Listen to the sounds and words. Listen again and practise.

/s/



suit

/ʃ/



shirt

2 CD3 8 Listen to these words. Notice how we say the **pink** and **blue** consonants. Listen again and practise.

/s/	/ʃ/
suit small skirt sell centre city police pencil expensive lesson Spanish	shirt she shop sugar tissues sure Turkish British Egyptian Russian Spanish

3 **a** CD3 9 Listen to this poem. Listen again and practise.

Sharon Smith has a small shop
In Shanghai city centre
She sells Spanish skirts and Turkish shirts
And expensive British suits
She sells Egyptian boots and Russian coats
What can she sell you?

b Work in pairs. Take turns to say lines of the poem.

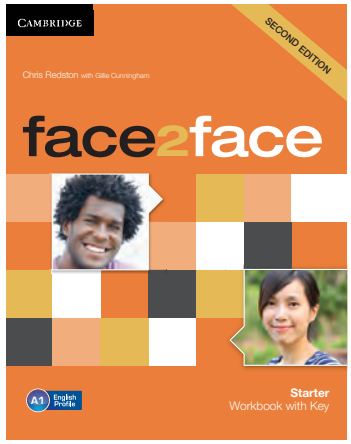
continue2learn

Vocabulary, Grammar and Real World

- **Extra Practice 7 and Progress Portfolio 7** p103
- **Language Summary 7** p126
- **7A–D** Workbook p33

Reading and Writing

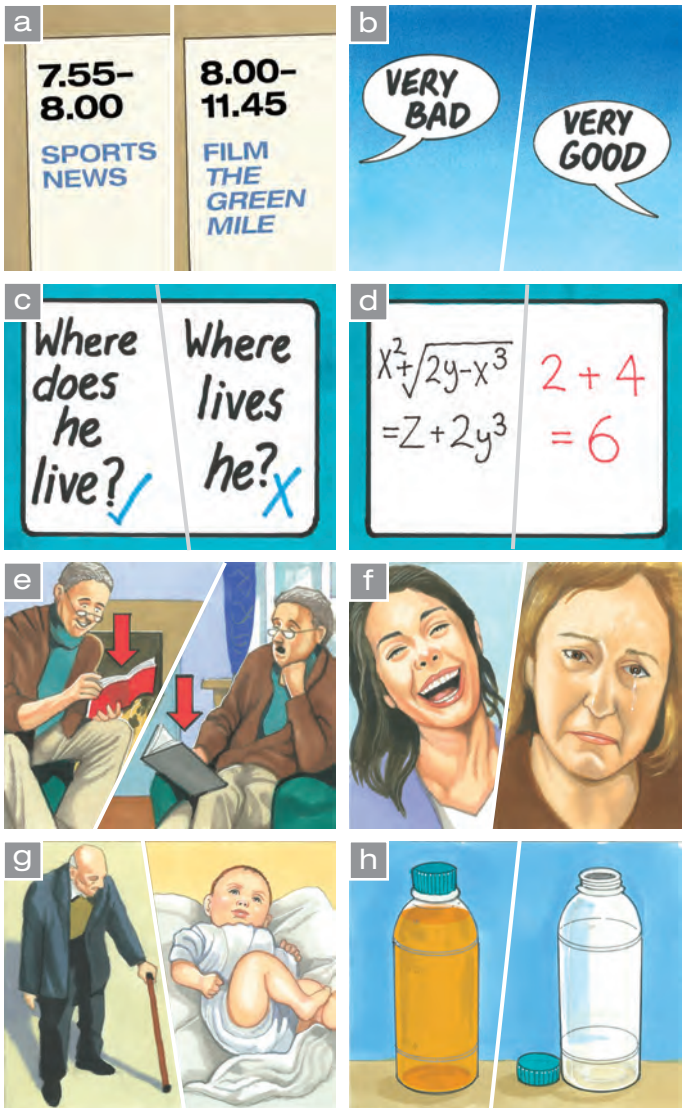
- **Portfolio 7** The same or different? Workbook p64
  Reading people in my family
  Writing sentences with *and*, *but* and object pronouns; word order (3); *both* and *together*



8A I was there

Vocabulary adjectives (2)
Grammar Past Simple of *be*: positive and negative

QUICK REVIEW Things people do online Write six phrases for things people do online (*send emails*, etc.). Work in groups. Compare phrases and say which of the things you do every day or every week. **A** *I send emails every day.*



Adjectives (2)

1 **a** Match these adjectives to pictures a–h.

short	a	long
happy		unhappy
interesting		boring
full		empty
difficult		easy
right		wrong
old		young
terrible, awful		great, fantastic, amazing

b CD3 10 **PRONUNCIATION** Listen and practise.

Three amazing days

2 **a** Check these words with your teacher.

a stadium a seat New Year's Eve
fireworks a party a football match

b CD3 11 Read and listen to Melanie, Tania and Diego. What were their 'amazing days'?

c Read the texts again. Choose the correct words in these sentences.

1 The Beatles' last concert was in *the UK* / *the USA*.
2 The concert was about *an hour* / *half an hour* long.
3 Tania was in Sydney with her *parents* / *friends*.
4 The fireworks at midnight were *fantastic* / *boring*.
5 Diego's friends were from *Spain* / *Holland*.
6 He was at the match with *two* / *three* other people.

I was at the Beatles' last concert. It was in San Francisco in 1966. There were 25,000 people at the concert, but the stadium wasn't full – there were about 17,000 empty seats! The concert wasn't very long, only 33 minutes, but I was very happy to be there. I was only sixteen at the time.



Melanie

HELP WITH GRAMMAR

Past Simple of *be*: positive and negative

3 **a** Look at these sentences. Are they in the present or the past?

I **was** at the World Cup Final.
We **were** near the Opera House.
The stadium **wasn't** full.
They **weren't** very happy.

b Look at the sentences in **3a** again. Then fill in the gaps in the table with *was*, *wasn't*, *were* and *weren't*.

POSITIVE (+)	NEGATIVE (–)
I _____	I **wasn't** (= was not)
you **were**	you **weren't** (= were not)
he / she / it **was**	he / she / it _____
we _____	we **weren't**
they **were**	they _____

TIP • The past of *there is* / *there are* is *there was* / *there were*.

GRAMMAR 8.1 p129

4 CD3 12 **PRONUNCIATION** Listen and practise. Notice how we say *was* and *were*.

I was /wəz/ at the World Cup Final.
We were /wə/ near the Opera House.

5 **a** Choose the correct words.

1 I *was* / *were* only thirteen at the time.
2 My sisters *wasn't* / *weren't* at the concert.
3 There *was* / *were* a lot of people in Sydney that night.
4 John Lennon *was* / *were* a great musician.
5 The fireworks *was* / *were* on TV in lots of countries.
6 It *was* / *were* my first World Cup.
7 There *wasn't* / *weren't* any empty seats in the stadium.
8 At 3 a.m. my parents *was* / *were* very tired, but I *wasn't* / *weren't*.
9 The concert *wasn't* / *weren't* very expensive – my ticket *was* / *were* only $4.50!

b Work in pairs. Compare answers. Who says each sentence: Melanie, Tania or Diego?

Get ready … Get it right!

6 Work in groups of three. Look at p96.

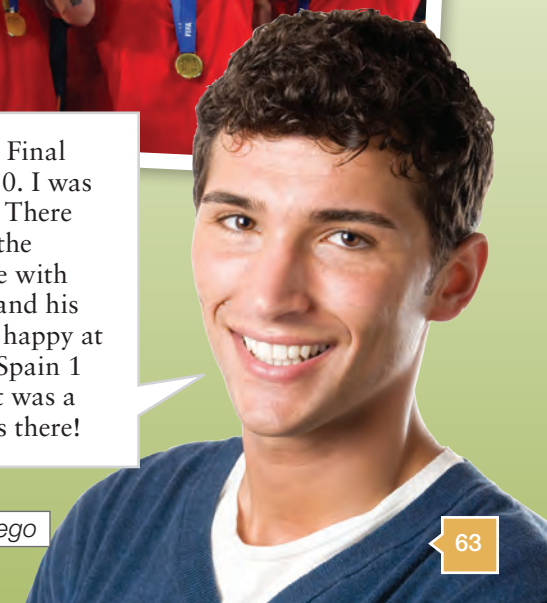






I was in Sydney on New Year's Eve 1999. I was only twelve, and I was there with my mum and dad. We were near the Opera House all evening, and at midnight there were some amazing fireworks. Then there was a big party in the city all night. It was a fantastic New Year!

Tanya



I was at the World Cup Final in Johannesburg in 2010. I was very young at the time. There were 85,000 people in the stadium and I was there with a friend from Holland and his dad. They weren't very happy at the end because it was Spain 1 Holland 0, but I was! It was a great match – and I was there!

Diego

8B Happy anniversary!

Vocabulary years and past time phrases
Grammar Past Simple of *be*: questions and short answers; *was born* / *were born*

QUICK REVIEW Adjectives Write six adjectives and their opposites (*difficult*, *easy*, etc.). Work in pairs. Take turns to say an adjective. Your partner says the opposite adjective and a sentence with this adjective: **A** *Difficult*. **B** *Easy. English is very easy!*

Years and past time phrases

1 a Work in pairs. Match 1–6 to a–f.

1	1887	a	nineteen eighty
2	1900	b	twenty ten
3	1980	c	eighteen eighty-seven
4	2000	d	two thousand and nine
5	2009	e	nineteen hundred
6	2010	f	two thousand

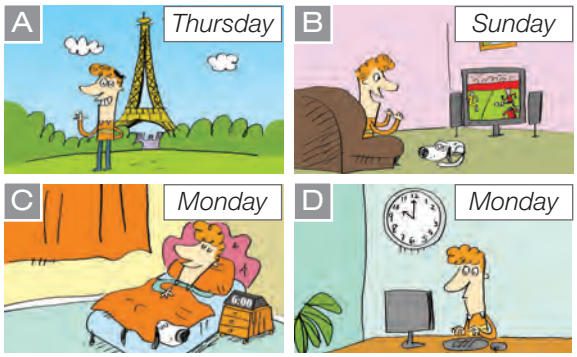
TIP • We use ***in*** with years: ***in*** *1980*, etc.

b CD3 13 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise.

c Work with your partner. Say these years.

2013 1977 2018 1815 1990 2003

2 a Match pictures A–D to sentences 1–4.



1 Joe was in Paris **last** week.
2 He's at work **now**.
3 He was in bed four hours **ago**.
4 He was at home **yesterday** afternoon.

b CD3 14 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise sentences 1–4.

3 Fill in the gaps with *yesterday*, *in*, *last* or *ago*.

1 I was in a café two hours *ago* .
2 I was at home _____ night.
3 I wasn't in this country _____ 1999.
4 I wasn't at work _____ morning.
5 I was in this class _____ month.
6 I wasn't in this class three months _____ .

An Indian wedding

4 a Check these words with your teacher.

a wedding a bride a groom a wedding anniversary

b Look at the photo of an Indian wedding. Which person is the bride? Which person is the groom?

c CD3 15 Listen to Sunil talk to a friend about his wedding. Choose the correct words in these sentences.

1 Sunil and Pria's wedding anniversary is on *Saturday* / *Sunday*.
2 Their wedding was *five* / *ten* years ago.
3 Their wedding was in *the UK* / *India*.
4 Sunil's parents *were* / *weren't* at the wedding.
5 There *was* / *wasn't* a party after the wedding.

d Listen again. Answer these questions.

1 Where was the wedding?
2 How old were Sunil and Pria on their wedding day?
3 How many people were at the wedding?
4 Where was Sunil's sister?
5 Were Sunil's brothers at the wedding?
6 How many days was the party?



HELP WITH GRAMMAR Past Simple of *be*: questions and short answers; *was born / were born*

5 **a** Look at these questions. Notice the word order.

***WH-* QUESTIONS (?)**

Where	**was**	the wedding?
How old	**were**	Sunil and Pria?

b Write these questions in the table.

1 How many people **were** at the wedding?
2 Where **was** Sunil's sister?

c Fill in the gaps with *was*, *were*, *wasn't* or *weren't*.

YES / NO QUESTIONS (?)	SHORT ANSWERS
Was I / he / she / it at the wedding?	Yes, I / he / she / it _____ .
_____ you / we / they at the wedding?	No, I / he / she / it _____ .
	Yes, you / we / they _____ .
	No, you / we / they _____ .

WAS BORN / WERE BORN

d Fill in the gaps with *was* or *were*.

1 **A** Where _____ Pria born?
B She _____ born in London.

2 **A** When _____ you born?
B I _____ born in 1991.

GRAMMAR 8.2 p129



6 CD3 16 **PRONUNCIATION** Listen and practise the questions and answers in **5**.

Where was the wedding?
How old were Sunil and Pria?

7 **a** Choose the correct words.

1 Who *was / were* the bride and groom?
2 *Was / Were* they the same age?
3 When *was / were* the wedding?
4 *Was / Were* Sunil's parents at the wedding?
5 Who *was / were* in the USA?
6 Where *was / were* Pria born?

b Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions.

8 **a** Make questions with these words.

1 you / last / at home / Sunday / Were ?
2 evening / you / yesterday / were / Where ?
3 three / you / months / on / Were / ago / holiday ?
4 New Year's Eve 1999 / you / on / were / Where ?
5 at work / last / Were / Monday / you ?
6 you / were / Where / born ?

b Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions.

9 **a** Write the names of three people you know. Think when and where they were born. Don't write this information.

b Work in pairs. Ask about the people on your partner's paper.

Who's Karima? — She's my sister.
When was she born? — In 1997.
Where was she born? — In Dubai.

Get ready … Get it right!

10 Work in new pairs. Student A p88. Student B p93.

8C REAL WORLD Birthdays



Vocabulary months and dates
Real World talking about days and dates; making suggestions

QUICK REVIEW Past Simple of *be* Work in pairs. Ask your partner where he or she was: three hours ago, yesterday afternoon, last Saturday, at 11 a.m., last Sunday, last New Year's Eve. **A** *Where were you three hours ago?* **B** *I was at work.*

Months and dates

1 **a** CD3 17 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the months.

January February March
April May June July
August September October
November December

b Work in pairs. Say a month. Your partner says the next two months.

March — April, May

2 **a** CD3 18 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise these dates. Notice the letters in **pink**.

1st	first	6th	sixth	11th	eleventh
2nd	second	7th	seventh	12th	twelfth
3rd	third	8th	eighth	20th	twentieth
4th	fourth	9th	ninth	21st	twenty-first
5th	fifth	10th	tenth	30th	thirtieth

b Work in pairs. Say these dates.

13th	14th	15th	16th	17th	18th
19th	22nd	23rd	24th	25th	26th
27th	28th	29th	31st		

c CD3 19 PRONUNCIATION Listen and check. Listen again and practise.

REAL WORLD Talking about days and dates

3 Read these questions and answers. Notice the words in bold.

1 **A** What day is it today?
B (It's) Monday.
2 **A** What's the date today?
B (It's) March **the** seventh.
3 **A** When's your birthday?
B (It's **on**) June **the** second.

REAL WORLD 8.1 p129

4 CD3 20 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the questions and answers in **3**.

5 CD3 21 Listen to four conversations. Which dates do you hear?

1 June *20th / 22nd*
2 March *13th / 30th*
3 October *3rd / 23rd*
4 April *1st / 4th*

6 **a** Write five dates (*March 3rd*, *August 25th*, etc.).

b Work in pairs. Say the dates. Write your partner's dates. Are they correct?

c Ask other students when their birthdays are. Do any students have birthdays in the same month as you?

When's your birthday, Adela?
It's on May 25th.
My birthday's on May 22nd.

Happy birthday!

7 **a** Check these words with your teacher.

a present — a driving test
go to a club — meet — decide

b VIDEO 8 CD3 22 Look at the photo of Danny and Karen. Listen to their conversation. What do they decide to do this evening?

c Work in pairs. How much can you remember? Choose the correct words or phrases.

1 Karen orders *an egg sandwich* / *a croissant*.
2 *Danny* / *Karen* has a driving test at *10.30* / *11.30*.
3 Danny's birthday was *yesterday* / *last week*.
4 There's a *Mexican* / *Italian* restaurant near *Karen's* / *Danny's* flat.
5 *Karen* / *Danny* goes to the restaurant *every week* / *every month*.
6 They decide to meet at the *café* / *cinema* at *seven o'clock* / *half past seven*.

d Watch or listen again. Check your answers.

REAL WORLD
Making suggestions

8 Read this conversation. Fill in the gaps with these words.

~~do~~ meet idea seven don't time we

What shall we [1] *do* (this evening)?

Let's (go to a club).

Why don't [2] _____ (go to the cinema)?

✓ Yes, that's a good [3] _____ .

✓✗ Maybe.

✗ No, I [4] _____ think so.

Where shall we [5] _____?

Let's meet at (the cinema).

What [6] _____ shall we meet?

About [7] _____ thirty.

REAL WORLD 8.2 p129

9 CD3 23 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the sentences in **8**.

What shall we do this evening?
Let's go to a club.

10 **a** Put this conversation in order.

GEORGE

a What shall we do tomorrow evening, Jessica? *1*
b Great! See you there!
c No, I don't think so.
d OK. What time shall we meet?
e Yes, that's a good idea. Where shall we meet?

JESSICA

f Let's meet at the restaurant.
g Why don't we go to the cinema? *2*
h About quarter to eight.
i OK. Let's go to that Indian restaurant in Old Street.

b CD3 24 Listen and check.

c Work in pairs. Practise the conversation in **10a**.

11 **a** Work in new pairs. Write a conversation about next Saturday. Use phrases in **8** and your own ideas.

b Practise your conversation until you can remember it.

c Work in groups of four. Take turns to role-play your conversations. What do the other pair decide to do on Saturday?

d Role-play one of your group's conversations for the class.



8D VOCABULARY AND SKILLS

Life's a party!

Vocabulary big numbers
Skills Reading and Listening: fantastic festivals; Listening: two festivals

QUICK REVIEW Making suggestions Work in pairs. You want to go out together tomorrow evening. Make suggestions about what to do. Decide a place and time to meet. **A** *What shall we do tomorrow evening?* **B** *Why don't we ... ?*

1 **a** Match the numbers in A to the phrases in B.

A	B
150	a thousand
390	a million
1,000	sixteen thousand, two hundred
16,200	a hundred and fifty
750,000	fifty million
1,000,000	three hundred and ninety
50,000,000	seven hundred and fifty thousand

b CD3 25 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise.

2 **a** CD3 26 Listen and write the numbers.

b Work in pairs. Compare answers.

3 **a** Work on your own. Write five big numbers.

b Work in new pairs. Say your numbers. Write your partner's numbers. Are they correct?

4 **a** Check these words with your teacher.

a festival · throw · a kilo · garlic · samba

b Read the article. Fill in the gaps with these numbers.

70 million · 5 million · 177,500 · 125,000 · 150,000 · 30,000 · 1,500

c CD3 27 Listen to the article and check your answers.

5 Read the article again. Answer these questions.

1 When and where is La Tomatina?
2 What do people do there?
3 What do people do at the festival in Ivrea?
4 When is the Gilroy Garlic Festival?
5 What food do people eat at this festival?
6 When was the first Glastonbury Festival?
7 What do people do at Carnival in Brazil?
8 How many days was the 2013 Kumbh Mela?

Fantastic festivals



There are lots of fantastic festivals around the world that you can visit. For example, on the last Wednesday in August every year, [a] _____ people travel to Buñol, in Spain, for La Tomatina. At this festival people throw tomatoes at each other – [b] _____ kilos of them!



There's also a similar festival in Italy, where the people of the town of Ivrea throw oranges at each other for three days. And every July [c] _____ people go to Gilroy, in California, for the Gilroy Garlic Festival. Here you can eat garlic bread, garlic chicken, garlic chocolate – and garlic ice cream!



Of course, not all festivals are about food. The UK's favourite music festival is the Glastonbury Festival. Only [d] _____ people were at the first Glastonbury Festival in June 1970, but in 2011 there were [e] _____ people there. And of course there's Carnival in Brazil, which is in February or March every year. In cities all over the country, people dance in the street to samba bands all day and all night. Every year about [f] _____ people enjoy Carnival in the streets of Rio de Janeiro. And if you want to go to a really big festival, there's the amazing Kumbh Mela in India. The Kumbh Mela festival in 2013 went on for 41 days and [g] _____ people were there!



Glastonbury



Rio Carnival

6 Work in pairs. Which festivals in the article would you like to go to? Which wouldn't you like to go to?

7 **a** CD3 28 Close your books. Listen to Ella and Owen. Which festivals in the article do they talk about?

b Listen again. Choose the correct answers.

1 Ella goes to about *three* / *four* festivals every year.
2 She likes Glastonbury because there are lots of different *bands* / *things you can do*.
3 She thinks the best thing about the festival is *the music* / *the people you meet*.
4 Owen went to Brazil in *February* / *March*.
5 He *loves* / *doesn't like* Brazilian music.
6 It was *easy* / *difficult* to sleep in the hotel.
7 He *can* / *can't* samba very well.
8 He has lots of *photos* / *new friends* from the festival.

HELP WITH LISTENING Linking (2)

8 **a** CD3 29 Listen to these sentences from Ella and Owen's conversation. Why do we link the words in **pink** and **blue**?

There are lots of different things you can do.
I love **sitting in cafés and** talking to people.
There were **thousands of people in** the street.
But I have a lot of new friends from the festival.

b Look at Audio Script CD3 28 p112. Listen to the whole conversation again and notice the consonant–vowel linking.

9 **a** Work in groups. Which festivals are there in your town, city or country? What do people do there?

b Tell the class about one festival in your town, city or country.

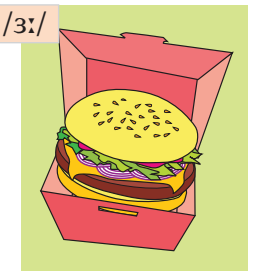

Kumbh Mela

HELP WITH PRONUNCIATION /ɔː/ and /ɜː/

1 CD3 30 Look at the pictures. Listen to the sounds and words. Listen again and practise.

/ɔː/ 

forty

/ɜː/ 
burger

2 CD3 31 Listen to these words. Notice how we say the **pink** and **blue** letters. Listen again and practise.

/ɔː/	/ɜː/
forty **four** sport	**bur**ger **fir**st **wor**k
boring **aw**ful **Au**gust	sh**ir**t sk**ir**t **Tur**kish
d**augh**ter sm**a**ll **a**lways	G**er**man g**ir**l **ear**ly
m**or**ning w**a**ter sh**or**t	th**ir**ty th**ir**d s**ur**name

3 **a** CD3 32 Listen and practise these sentences.

1 It's the th**ir**ty-f**ir**st of **Au**gust.
2 It was a b**or**ing m**or**ning at w**or**k.
3 This sm**a**ll b**ur**ger is **aw**ful.
4 The T**ur**kish g**ir**l is **a**lways **ear**ly.
5 It's a G**er**man sp**or**ts company.
6 My d**augh**ter has f**or**ty-f**our** sk**ir**ts and th**ir**ty-three sh**ir**ts!

b Work in pairs. Practise the sentences.

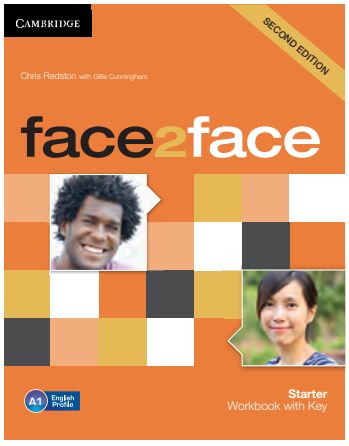
continue2learn

Vocabulary, Grammar and Real World

- **Extra Practice 8 and Progress Portfolio 8** p104
- **Language Summary 8** p128
- **8A–D** Workbook p38

Reading and Writing

- **Portfolio 8** Going out Workbook p66
  Reading entertainment adverts; emails
  Writing *a/an* and *the*; your last film, play or rock concert



9A Amazing journeys

Vocabulary transport
Grammar Past Simple: positive (regular and irregular verbs)

QUICK REVIEW Dates; *was born* Write the names of four people in your family. Work in pairs. Swap papers. Ask questions about the people and when they were born:
A *Who's Veronica?* **B** *She's my sister.*
A *When was she born?* **B** *On June 2nd 1994.*

Transport

1 **a** Tick (✓) the words you know. Then check new words in VOCABULARY 9.1 p130.

a car a bus a train a taxi a bike
a motorbike a plane a boat

b CD3 33 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise.

c Underline the verbs in these sentences.

1 I usually go to work by car.
2 I come to this school by bus.
3 I never travel by plane.
4 I always walk to work.

TIP • We travel ***by*** *car*, ***by*** *bus*, etc.

2 **a** Write sentences about you.

1 I … to work / school / university …
I always go to work by bus.
2 I usually … to this school …
3 When I go shopping, I usually …
4 I love travelling …
5 I don't like travelling …
6 I never travel …

b Work in pairs. Say your sentences. Are any the same?

Bangkok to Brighton

3 **a** Check these words with your teacher.

a tuk-tuk a journey
raise money for charity

b Look at the photos and map. What is the article about, do you think?

c Read the article. Are your guesses correct?



Let's go by tuk-tuk!



Two English women, Jo Huxster and Antonia Bolingbroke-Kent, travelled from Thailand to the UK – in a pink tuk-tuk!

Jo **had** the idea when she **went** to Bangkok on holiday. When she **came** back to England, she **told** her friend Antonia what she **wanted** to do. Antonia **liked** the idea, so they went back to Bangkok and **bought** a tuk-tuk called Ting Tong. Jo and Antonia **started** their journey on May 28th 2006. They travelled for 12 hours every day, usually on very bad roads. All the people they **met** were very friendly and they sometimes **gave** Jo and Antonia food and money. The two women travelled 12,500 miles and **visited** 12 countries. They **arrived** in Brighton, in the UK, 98 days after they **left** Bangkok. After they **got** home, they **wrote** a book called *Tuk-Tuk to the Road*. They also raised £50,000 for charity.



4 Read the article again. Complete the table with the correct dates, places and numbers.

a	travelled by	*tuk-tuk*
b	date started	
c	place started	
d	place finished	
e	miles travelled	
f	countries visited	*12*
g	days travelled	
h	money raised	

HELP WITH GRAMMAR Past Simple: positive (regular and irregular verbs)

5 **a** Look at the regular Past Simple forms in **blue** in the article. Then complete these rules with *-d* or *-ed*.

REGULAR VERBS

- To make the Past Simple of regular verbs, we usually add _____ to the verb.
- For regular verbs that end in *-e* (*like*, *arrive*, etc.), we add _____ to the verb.

TIP • The Past Simple of *travel* is *travel**led***.

b Look at the irregular Past Simple forms in **pink** in the article. Match them to verbs 1–10.

IRREGULAR VERBS

1	buy	*bought*	6	have	
2	come		7	leave	
3	get		8	meet	
4	give		9	tell	
5	go		10	write	

TIP • The Past Simple of regular and irregular verbs is the same for *I*, *you*, *he*, *she*, *it*, *we* and *they*.

c Check in GRAMMAR 9.1 p131. Learn the other irregular verbs in the table.

6 **a** Write the Past Simple forms of these regular verbs.

1	visit	*visited*	7	live	
2	watch		8	want	
3	play		9	love	
4	hate		10	talk	
5	walk		11	start	
6	work		12	finish	

b CD3 34 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise. Which Past Simple forms end in /ɪd/?

c CD3 35 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the irregular Past Simple forms in **5b**.

HELP WITH LISTENING

Present Simple or Past Simple

7 **a** CD3 36 Listen to these sentences. Notice the difference between the **Present Simple** and the **Past Simple**.

1 I **live** in London. I **lived** in London.
2 We **work** at home. We **worked** at home.
3 They **love** it. They **loved** it.

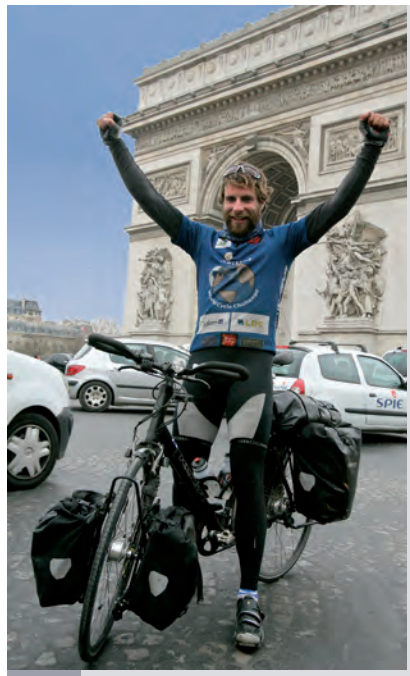
b CD3 37 Listen to six pairs of sentences. Which do you hear first, the Present Simple or the Past Simple?

1 Past Simple

Around the world by bike

8 **a** Read about Mark Beaumont's journey. Fill in the gaps with the Past Simple of the verbs in brackets.

b Work in pairs. Compare answers.



Mark Beaumont, from Scotland, [1] *cycled* (cycle) around the world in only 194 days and 17 hours. Mark [2] _____ (have) the idea after he [3] _____ (leave) Glasgow University in 2007, and he [4] _____ (start) his journey in Paris on August 5th the same year. He [5] _____ (travel) 18,300 miles and [6] _____ (visit) twenty countries, and he [7] _____ (meet) a lot of interesting people. He also [8] _____ (write) an online diary and [9] _____ (get) emails from friends and family every week. Mark [10] _____ (finish) his journey in Paris on February 15th 2008. His family [11] _____ (go) to Paris for the big day, and his mother [12] _____ (tell) the newspapers she [13] _____ (be) very proud of her son. Mark also [14] _____ (raise) over £10,000 for charity.

Get ready … Get it right!

9 Work in groups of three. Look at p96.

9B My last holiday

Vocabulary holiday activities
Grammar Past Simple: negative, questions and short answers

QUICK REVIEW Past Simple Write five regular or irregular verbs and their Past Simple forms. Work in pairs. Take turns to say the verbs. Your partner says a sentence with the Past Simple form: **A** *go* **B** *I went out with friends last night*.

Holiday activities

1 a Work in pairs. Tick (✓) the phrases you know. Then do the exercise in VOCABULARY 9.2 p130.

go on holiday take photos go to the beach
stay with friends or family stay in a hotel
go sightseeing go swimming go for a walk
rent a car travel around have a good time

b CD3 38 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise.

c Work with your partner. What are the Past Simple forms of the verbs in 1a?

go → went *take → took*

2 a Write four sentences about things you do on holiday. Use *always*, *usually*, *sometimes* and phrases from 1a.

I always go to the beach.
I usually stay with friends.

b Work in pairs. Say your sentences. Are any of your partner's sentences true for you?

Favourite places

3 a Check these words with your teacher.

a palace the sea the scenery

b CD3 39 Read and listen to Heidi, Charlie and John. Match the people to the photos on p73. Which countries are the places in?

c Read about the holidays again. Fill in the gaps in these sentences with *Heidi*, *Charlie*, *John* or *Diane*.

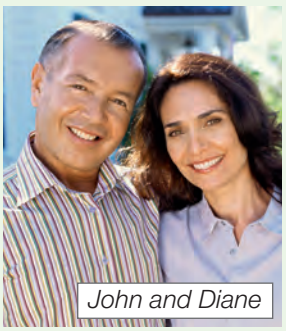
1 *Charlie* visited a beautiful old palace.
2 _____ stayed with some friends.
3 _____ stayed by the sea.
4 _____ only went to one city.
5 _____ and _____ went for a walk every day.
6 _____ and _____ went on holiday last year.
7 _____, _____ and _____ stayed in hotels.


Heidi

I went on holiday to Moscow last year. I didn't stay in a hotel, I stayed with some friends. I went sightseeing in the mornings and I took a lot of photos. My favourite place was Red Square. There are a lot of beautiful buildings and it's a great place to watch people. I was only in Russia for a week, so I didn't visit any other places. Next time, maybe!


Charlie

Last year I travelled around Spain on holiday. My favourite place was Granada, a very friendly city in the south. When I was there I visited the Alhambra, a beautiful old palace – that was fantastic! I also went to Valencia, a very interesting city by the sea. I stayed in a nice hotel and went to the beach every afternoon. But I didn't go swimming because I can't swim!


John and Diane

We didn't go on holiday last year, but two years ago we went to Turkey. We rented a car and travelled around the country for two weeks. Our favourite place was Cappadocia – the scenery there is amazing. We stayed in a small hotel and went for a walk every morning. We didn't stay there for very long, but we took about 500 photos!

HELP WITH GRAMMAR Past Simple: negative

4 a Look at these sentences. Notice the word order.

I	**didn't**	**stay**	in a hotel.	(**didn't** = did not)
He	**didn't**	**go**	swimming.	

b Write these sentences in the table.

1 She **didn't visit** any other places.
2 We **didn't go** on holiday last year.
3 They **didn't stay** there for very long.

GRAMMAR 9.2 p131


Cappadocia


Red Square


the Alhambra

5 CD3 40 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the sentences in **4**.

I didn't stay in a hotel.

6 **a** Make these sentences negative. Write the correct sentences.

1 a Heidi went to Prague.
Heidi didn't go to Prague. She went to Moscow.
b She went sightseeing in the afternoons.
2 a Charlie went to Spain two years ago.
b He stayed with friends in Valencia.
3 a John and Diane rented bikes for two weeks.
b They stayed in a big hotel in Cappadocia.

b Work in pairs. Compare sentences.

7 Cover the texts. Then answer these questions.

1 Where did Heidi go on holiday?
2 Who did she stay with?
3 When did Charlie go to the beach?
4 Did he go swimming?
5 Did John and Diane visit Turkey last year?
6 How many photos did they take?

HELP WITH GRAMMAR Past Simple: questions and short answers

8 **a** Look at these questions. Notice the word order.

***WH*- QUESTIONS (?)**

Where	**did**	Heidi	**go**	on holiday?
Who	**did**	she	**stay**	with?

b Write these questions in the table.

1 When **did** Charlie **go** to the beach?
2 How many photos **did** they **take**?

c Fill in the gaps with *did* or *didn't*.

YES / NO QUESTIONS (?)	SHORT ANSWERS
Did he go swimming?	Yes, he _____ . No, he _____ .
_____ they visit Turkey last year?	Yes, they _____ . No, they _____ .

GRAMMAR 9.3 p131

9 CD3 41 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the questions and short answers in **8**.

10 Work in pairs. Student A p90. Student B p95.

Get ready … Get it right!

11 **a** Make Past Simple questions with *you*.

- When … last go on holiday?
  When did you last go on holiday?
- Where … go?
- What … do there?
- Who … go with?
- Where … stay?
- How … travel around?
- … have a good time?

b Answer the questions for you.

12 **a** Work in pairs. Ask your partner the questions.

b Tell the class about your partner's holiday.

9C REAL WORLD A weekend away

Vocabulary at the station
Real World buying train tickets; asking about last weekend

QUICK REVIEW Holiday activities Write four things people do on holiday (*stay in a hotel*, etc.). Work in pairs. Compare lists. Then talk about your favourite holiday.



At the station

1 **a** Work in pairs. Look at the photos. Match these words to 1–6.

a customer 1 a single ☐ a return ☐
a ticket office ☐ a ticket machine ☐ a platform ☐

b CD3 42 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise.

2 VIDEO 9.1 CD3 43 It's Saturday morning. Sally is at the station. Watch or listen to her conversation with the ticket seller. Where does Sally want to go? How much is her ticket?

REAL WORLD Buying train tickets

3 VIDEO 9.1 CD3 43 Watch or listen again. Fill in the gaps.

CUSTOMER	TICKET SELLER
A return to [a] _____ , please.	When do you want to come back?
Tomorrow evening.	OK. That's [b]£_____ , please. Here are your tickets.
Thanks. What time's the next train?	There's one at [c] _____ .
OK. Which [d] _____ ?	Platform [e] _____ .
And what time does it arrive in [f] _____ ?	At [g] _____ .
Thanks a lot. Bye.	

REAL WORLD 9.1 p131

4 CD3 44 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the sentences in **3**.

5 **a** Work in pairs. Practise the conversation in **3**. Take turns to be the customer.

b Close your books. Practise the conversation again.

6 **a** Read this conversation. Choose the correct words.

CUSTOMER A single [1](*to*) / *from* Oxford, please.
TICKET SELLER OK. [2]*That* / *That's* £18.60, please. Here's [3]*you* / *your* ticket.
C Thanks. What time's the [4]*next* / *near* train?
TS There's one [5]*at* / *on* 11.52.
C [6]*Which* / *Where* platform?
TS Platform 1.
C What time [7]*do* / *does* it arrive in Oxford?
TS [8]*In* / *At* 12.47.
C Thanks [9]*much* / *a lot*. Bye.

b CD3 45 Listen and check.

c Work in pairs. Practise the conversation. Take turns to be the customer.

7 Work in new pairs. Student A p90. Student B p95.

Last weekend

8 **a** VIDEO 9.2 CD3 46 It's Monday morning. Watch or listen to Rob and Sally talk about last weekend. Put photos A–D in the order they talk about them.

b Work in pairs. How much can you remember? Choose the correct words or phrases.

1 Sally went to see her *brother* / *sister* last weekend.
2 They went shopping on *Saturday* / *Sunday* afternoon.
3 They *enjoyed* / *didn't enjoy* their evening at the theatre.
4 *Sally* / *Her brother* doesn't like art galleries very much.
5 They had lunch with *some friends* / *their parents*.
6 Rob went to a *Turkish* / *Spanish* restaurant on Saturday.

c Watch or listen again. Check your answers.

REAL WORLD Asking about last weekend

9 Fill in the gaps in questions 1–7 with these words.

~~have~~ you did What do good Where

1 Did you *have* a good weekend?
2 _____ did you do at the weekend?
3 _____ did you go?
4 What did you _____ there?
5 Did you have a _____ time?
6 What _____ you see?
7 Did _____ enjoy it?

REAL WORLD 9.2 p131

10 CD3 47 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the questions in 9.

Did you have a good weekend?

11 **a** Make notes about things you did last weekend.

went for a walk *played tennis* *watched TV*

b Work in pairs. Ask your partner about last weekend. Use questions from 9 and your own questions. Give more information if possible.

What did you do last weekend?

I went for a walk.

Where did you go?

c Tell the class about one thing your partner did last weekend.











9D VOCABULARY AND SKILLS

Who, what, when?

Vocabulary question words
Skills Reading: a quiz; Listening: How many did I get right?

QUICK REVIEW Past Simple *yes/no* questions Work in pairs. Ask questions about yesterday. Find five things you both did: **A** *Did you eat out yesterday?* **B** *Yes, I did.* **A** *Me too.*

1 **a** Check these words with your teacher.

a billion	the Earth	the moon	a director	the President	earn

b Work in pairs. Do the quiz.

2 CD3 48 Listen to Jackie and Mark do the quiz. Tick the correct answers in the quiz. How many answers did you get right?

HOW MUCH DO YOU KNOW?

1 What is the capital of Australia?
a Canberra
b Sydney
c Melbourne





2 Where were the 2008 Olympic Games?
a London
b Athens
c Beijing

3 How old is the Earth?
a 10 billion years old
b 4½ billion years old
c 1½ billion years old





4 Who was the director of the films *Jaws*, *E.T.* and *Jurassic Park*?
a James Cameron
b Martin Scorsese
c Steven Spielberg

5 When did the first man walk on the moon?
a 1949
b 1969
c 1989





6 How much does the President of the USA earn a year?
a $400,000
b $700,000
c $1 million

7 How many countries are there in Africa?
a Fourteen
b Thirty-four
c Fifty-four



8 Why is the English town of Stratford-upon-Avon famous?
a Because Harry Potter went to school there
b Because the world's first football match was played there
c Because the writer William Shakespeare was born there



HELP WITH LISTENING Sentence stress (3)

3 **a** CD3 48 Read and listen to the beginning of the conversation. Notice the sentence stress. We stress the important words.

JACKIE Mark, do you want to do a quiz?
MARK Yes, I love doing quizzes. What's the first question?
JACKIE OK. What is the capital of Australia? Is it Canberra, Sydney or Melbourne?

b Look at Audio Script CD3 48 p113. Listen to the whole conversation and follow the sentence stress. How many questions did Mark get right?

HELP WITH VOCABULARY Question words

4 Look at the question words in **pink** in the quiz. Match the words to the things they ask about.

Who	a thing
What	a person
When	a reason (*because* …)
Where	an amount of money (*£50*, etc.)
Why	a place
How old	a time
How many	age
How much	a number

VOCABULARY 9.4 p130

5 **a** Choose the correct words.

1 *When* / *Who* did you last go to the cinema?
2 *What* / *Where* did you do last Friday?
3 *How old* / *How many* is your mobile phone?
4 *How many* / *How much* people live in your house or flat?
5 *When* / *Who* was your first English teacher?
6 *Why* / *What* do you want to learn English?
7 *Who* / *Where* were your parents born?
8 *When* / *Who* did you last go to a concert?
9 *How many* / *How much* brothers and sisters do you have?
10 *How many* / *How much* do you spend on travel?

b Work in pairs. Take turns to ask the questions in **5a**. Ask more questions if possible.

When did you last go to the cinema?

About three weeks ago.

What did you see?

6 **a** Write four questions with *you* to ask another student. Use the question words in **4**.

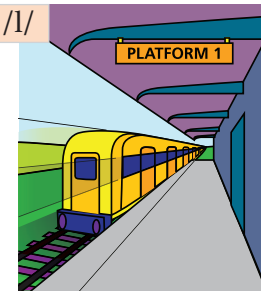
b Work in new pairs. Take turns to ask your questions. Ask more questions if possible.

c Tell the class two things about your partner.

HELP WITH PRONUNCIATION /l/ and /r/

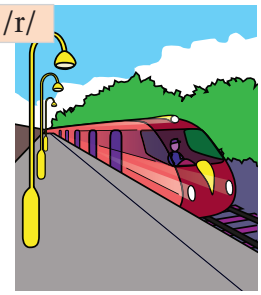
1 CD3 49 Look at the pictures. Listen to the sounds and words. Listen again and practise.

/l/



leave

/r/



arrive

2 CD3 50 Listen to these words. Notice how we say the **pink** and **blue** consonants. Listen again and practise.

/l/	/r/
leave plane flying	arrive train read
like England place	write price Russia
dollars holiday wallet	around very married
travelling classroom	travelling classroom

3 **a** Sometimes we don't say the letter *r* in British English. Look at these words. Which *r*s do we say (✓)? Which don't we say (✗)?

friend ✓ first ✗ doctor green morning
radio sport park right theatre
fruit start tomorrow great terrible

b CD3 51 Listen and check. Listen again and practise.

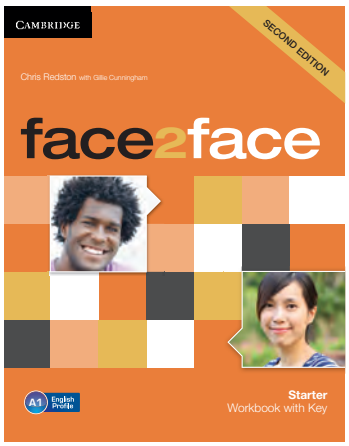
continue2learn

Vocabulary, Grammar and Real World

- **Extra Practice 9 and Progress Portfolio 9** p105
- **Language Summary 9** p130
- **9A–D** Workbook p43

Reading and Writing

- **Portfolio 9** On holiday Workbook p68
  Reading a travel blog; a holiday in France
  Writing *because*, *so*, *when*; your last holiday



10A Life changes

Vocabulary future plans; future time phrases
Grammar *be going to*: positive and negative

QUICK REVIEW Question words Work in pairs. Write three questions with *you*. Use question words (*What*, etc.). Work with another pair and ask your questions. Ask more questions if possible: **A** *What did you do last night?* **B** *I went out with friends.* **A** *Where did you go?*

Future plans

1 **a** Work in pairs. Fill in the gaps with these verbs. Then check in VOCABULARY 10.1 p132.

~~start~~ look for get do leave move

start — school or university / a new job

_____ — school or university / your job

_____ — a (computer) course / an exam

_____ — house / to another city or country

_____ — engaged / married

_____ — a house or a flat / a (new) job

b CD3 52 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the phrases in **1a**.

c Work in new pairs. Test your partner.

a course | do a course

A world language

2 **a** CD3 53 Look at the photos. Read and listen to Isabella, Kamil, Ali and Colette. Where does each person study English?

b Read the texts again. Fill in the gaps with *Isabella*, *Kamil*, *Ali* and *Colette*.

1 *Isabella* is going to get married next year.
2 _____ is going to do a computer course.
3 _____ is going to travel around the UK.
4 _____ is going to move to Sydney.
5 _____ is going to look for a job.
6 _____ is going to start a new job.
7 _____ is going to move to Rio.



Isabella from Brazil

I study English at the University of São Paulo. My boyfriend, Gustavo, is also a student here. He studies medicine and he's going to be a doctor. We're going to get married next year. But we aren't going to live in São Paulo, we're going to move to Rio, where my family lives.

Kamil from Poland

I do English at school. It's my favourite subject and I want to study it at university. I'm going to leave school in June, but I'm not going to start university this year. First I'm going to do a computer course here in Kraków and then I'm going to look for a job in the UK.





Ali from Egypt

I'm at an English language school in Cambridge. We have classes for five hours every day! Next month my sister is going to visit me and we're going to travel around the UK. She isn't going to stay here for very long, only two weeks. Then I'm going to start a new job in Cairo.

HELP WITH GRAMMAR

be going to: positive and negative

3 **a** Look again at the sentences in **2b**. Then choose the correct phrase in this rule.

- We use ***be going to* + verb** to talk about *the past / the present / future plans*.

b Look at these sentences. Notice the word order.

POSITIVE (+)

I	**'m**	**going to**	**do**	a computer course.

NEGATIVE (–)

I	**'m not**	**going to**	**start**	university this year.

c Write these sentences in the correct tables.

1 He**'s going to leave** his job.
2 She **isn't going to stay** here for very long.
3 We**'re going to travel** around the UK.
4 They **aren't going to live** in São Paulo.

GRAMMAR 10.1 p133

4 CD3 54 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the sentences in **3**.

do a computer course →
I'm going to /tə/ do a computer course.

5 **a** Look again at the texts about Isabella, Kamil, Ali and Colette. Underline all the sentences with *be going to*.

b Work in pairs. Compare answers. Which sentences are negative?

Colette from France



My husband, Oliver, is Australian, so we sometimes speak English together at home. I also study English online for four hours a week and I'm going to do an exam next month. Our two daughters live with us now, but they're going to move to Paris in September. And next year Oliver's going to leave his job and we're going to move to Sydney!

6 **a** Fill in the gaps with the correct form of *be going to* and the verbs in brackets.

1
a We *'re going to visit* London and Bath. (visit)
b She _____ in the UK for two weeks. (stay)
2
a They _____ a flat together. (look for)
b We _____ a house near the beach. (buy)
3
a He _____ university next year. (leave)
b We _____ a big wedding. (not have)
4
a I _____ my exams in June. (do)
b I _____ a job in London. (not look for)

b Work in pairs. Compare answers. Then match the sentences to the people in the photos.

Future time phrases

7 **a** Put these future time phrases in order.

tonight 1 | in June next year ☐ | next month ☐
in 2025 ☐ | tomorrow morning ☐ | next week ☐

b Write three sentences about things that your family and friends are going to do in the future. Use words and phrases from **7a** and your own ideas.

My friend Jin is going to start a new job next week.

c Work in pairs. Take turns to tell your partner your sentences.

Get ready … Get it right!

8 Write one thing you're going to do: after class, tomorrow evening, next Sunday, next week, next month, next year.

meet some friends after class
watch a football match tomorrow evening

9 **a** Work in groups. Talk about your plans. Are any the same?

I'm going to meet some friends after class.

Me too.

b Tell the class about your group's plans.

Meltem and I are going to meet some friends after class.

10B A new start

Vocabulary phrases with *have*, *watch*, *go*, *go to*
Grammar *be going to*: questions and short answers

QUICK REVIEW Future plans Write one phrase for these verbs: *start*, *leave*, *do*, *move*, *get*, *look for* (*start a new job*, etc.). Work in pairs. Compare phrases. Then say when you are going to do some of the things on your lists: *I'm going to start a new job next month.*

Phrases with *have*, *watch*, *go*, *go to*

1 **a** Work in pairs. Match these words or phrases to the correct verbs. Then check in VOCABULARY 10.3 p132.

~~dinner with friends~~ the cinema
shopping TV swimming the news
coffee with friends sport on TV
the gym running a party (x2)

have *dinner with friends* _____ _____

watch _____ _____ _____

go _____ _____ _____

go to _____ _____ _____

b CD3 55 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the phrases in 1a.

c Work with your partner. Write one more word or phrase for the verbs in 1a.

have breakfast *go to a concert*

2 **a** Write two true sentences and two false sentences about your future plans. Use *be going to* and phrases from 1.

I'm going to have a party on Saturday.

b Work in pairs. Say your sentences. Guess if your partner's sentences are true or false.

I'm going to have a party on Saturday. — I think that's false.
No, it's true! It's my birthday!

Future plans

3 **a** CD3 56 Look at the photo and listen to the conversation. What are Rosie, Andy and Jason going to do on Friday?

b Listen again. Answer these questions.

1 When is Rosie going to move to South Africa?
2 What is her husband going to do there?
3 Is Rosie going to look for a job?
4 Where are her brothers going to live?
5 Are Rosie and her husband going to have a party?
6 What is Andy going to do this evening?

HELP WITH GRAMMAR
be going to: questions and short answers

4 **a** Look at these questions. Notice the word order.

***WH-* QUESTIONS (?)**

When	**is**	Rosie	**going to**	**move**	to South Africa?
What	**is**	her husband	**going to**	**do**	there?

b Write these questions in the table.

1 Where **are** her brothers **going to live**?
2 What **is** Andy **going to do** this evening?

c Fill in the gaps with *am*, *is*, *are*, *isn't* and *aren't*.

***YES / NO* QUESTIONS (?)**	**SHORT ANSWERS**
Are you going to see a film?	Yes, I _____ . No, I'm not.
_____ she going to look for a job?	Yes, she is. No, she _____ .
_____ you going to sell your flat?	Yes, we _____ . No, we aren't.
_____ they going to have a party?	Yes, they are. No, they _____ .

GRAMMAR 10.2 p133



5 **a** Make questions with these words.

1 are / What / next weekend / going to / you / do ?
What are you going to do next weekend?
2 after class / are / going to / you / What / do ?
3 going to / you / When / your homework / do / are ?
4 get up / are / going to / you / tomorrow / What time ?
5 you / tomorrow evening / are / Where / dinner / have / going to ?
6 going to / you / next year / go / are / on holiday / Where ?

b CD3 ▶ 57 PRONUNCIATION Listen and check. Listen again and practise.

What are you going to /tə/ do next weekend?

c Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions in **5a**. Make notes on your partner's answers.

d Work in new pairs. Talk about your partner in **5c**.

Get ready … Get it right!

6 Write *yes* / *no* questions with *you* for these plans. Use *be going to* and verbs from **1a**.

- shopping on Saturday?
  Are you going to go shopping on Saturday?
- TV tonight?
- the cinema this week?
- coffee with friends after class?
- swimming or running next weekend?
- the gym next week?
- a party next weekend?
- dinner with friends on Saturday evening?



7 **a** Ask other students your questions. Find one person who is going to do each thing. Then ask one more question.

Are you going to go shopping on Saturday?

Yes, I am.

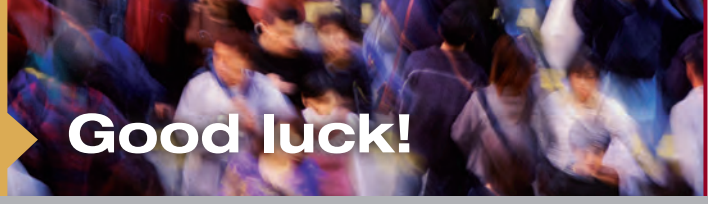
What are you going to buy?

A new dress.

b Tell the class about one student's plans.

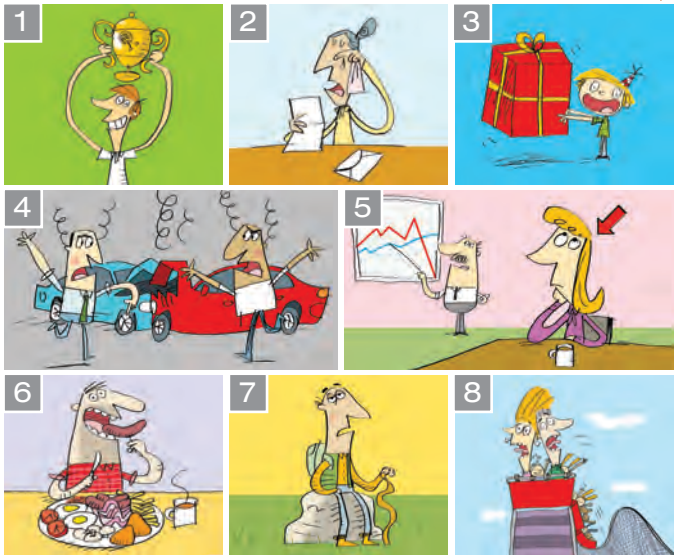
Hiromi's going to buy a new dress on Saturday.

10C REAL WORLD Good luck!



Vocabulary adjectives (3); feelings
Real World saying goodbye and good luck

QUICK REVIEW Phrases with *have, watch, go, go to*
Work in pairs. Write all the phrases with *have*, *watch*, *go* and *go to* you can remember (*have a party*, etc.). Then compare phrases with another pair. Who has more phrases?



How do you feel?

1 **a** Work in pairs. Match these adjectives to pictures 1–8. Then check in VOCABULARY 10.4 p132.

excited 3 | tired ☐ | happy ☐ | sad ☐
bored ☐ | scared ☐ | hungry ☐ | angry ☐

TIP • We can say *I'**m** excited*, etc. or *I **feel** excited*, etc.

b CD3 58 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise.

c Work in new pairs. Test your partner.

Who's happy? | The man in picture 1.

2 **a** Complete these sentences with *always*, *usually*, *sometimes* or *never* to make them true for you.

1 I'm _____ happy on my birthday.
2 I'm _____ bored at the weekend.
3 I'm _____ angry with my friends.
4 I'm _____ tired on Friday evenings.
5 I'm _____ hungry at 4 a.m.
6 I'm _____ excited before I go on holiday.
7 I'm _____ scared when I fly.
8 I'm _____ sad when I say goodbye to people.

b Work in pairs. Compare sentences.



See you soon!

3 **a** Look at photos A–C. Where are the people?

b VIDEO 10 CD3 59 Close your books. Then watch or listen to the people's conversations. When are they going to see each other again?

4 **a** Work in pairs. How much can you remember? Choose the correct words in conversations A–C.

A

SALLY Right, it's time to go. That's my [1] *train / bus*.
CHRIS OK. See you soon. Have a good [2] *journey / holiday*.
SALLY Thanks a lot.
CHRIS Text me when you arrive in [3] *Manchester / London*.
SALLY Yes, of course. See you in [4] *two / three* hours. Bye!

B

DANNY It's ten past [5] *ten / eleven*. Time to go.
KAREN Yes, you're right. I don't want to be late.
DANNY OK. See you [6] *tomorrow / this evening*.
KAREN Have a good [7] *day / journey*.
DANNY You too. And good luck with your [8] *driving test / job interview*.
KAREN Thanks a lot. See you.

C

DOROTA Are you going to study here next [9] *year / course*?
KHALID Yes, I am.
DOROTA Me too. See you in [10] *September / December*.
KHALID Yes, see you.
DOROTA And good luck with your new [11] *school / job*.
KHALID Thanks very much. Goodbye.

b VIDEO 10 CD3 59 Watch or listen again. Check your answers.





REAL WORLD Saying goodbye and good luck

5 **a** Fill in the gaps with these words.

~~journey~~ much lot job see September

Have a good ([1] *journey*).

Thanks a [2] _____ .

See you (in [3] _____).

Yes, [4] _____ you.

Good luck with your (new [5] _____).

Thanks very [6] _____ .

b Work in pairs. Which phrase in **bold** in **5a** can you use with these words or phrases?

holiday in two hours driving test
day this evening weekend on Monday
exam birthday new school
soon time English test later

Have a good holiday.

REAL WORLD 10.1 p133

6 CD3 60 PRONUNCIATION Listen and practise the sentences in **5**.

Have a good journey.

7 **a** Put conversations A and B in order.

A

ALAN Oh, nice. Have a good time.
ALAN What are you going to do after work? *1*
ALAN Thanks very much. See you tomorrow.
JANE I'm going to have dinner with friends. *2*
JANE Yes, see you. Bye!
JANE Thanks a lot. And good luck with your exam.

B

RYAN Thanks. Oh, and good luck with your new job.
RYAN To Edinburgh, in Scotland.
RYAN I'm going to go on holiday next week.
LILY Really? Where are you going?
LILY Thanks a lot.
LILY Well, have a good holiday.

b CD3 61 Listen and check.

c Work in pairs. Practise the conversations in **7a**.

8 **a** Think of two things you're going to do in the future.

b Work in groups or with the whole class. Talk about your plans. Use sentences from **5**.

I'm going to visit my sister on Sunday.

Have a good time.

HELP WITH PRONUNCIATION Vowel sounds: review

1 CD3 62 Listen to the sounds and words. Listen again and practise.

/æ/ bag	/ə/ computer	/ɪ/ six	/iː/ nineteen
have			
/ɒ/ coffee	**/ʌ/ umbrella**	**/ɔː/ forty**	**/ɜː/ burger**

2 **a** Work in pairs. Write these words in the table. There are three words for each sound.

have keys different breakfast long girl market
jeans bored country holiday amazing walk work
angry hungry because university bought beach
ticket money fantastic cinema

b CD3 63 Listen and check. Listen again and practise.

3 **a** CD3 64 Listen to these sentences. Listen again and practise.

1 In my bag there's some money, an umbrella and my keys.
2 I have a big breakfast before I walk to work at the university.
3 Tom's very angry because he can't find his cinema ticket.
4 They went on a long holiday to forty different countries!
5 The girl was hungry and bored so she had a burger and a coffee.
6 I bought these fantastic jeans at an amazing market near the beach.

b Work in pairs. Take turns to say the sentences.

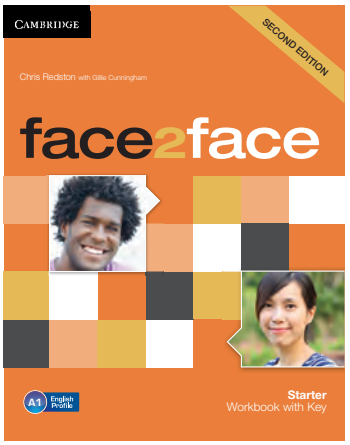
continue2learn

Vocabulary, Grammar and Real World

- **Extra Practice 10 and Progress Portfolio 10** p106
- **Language Summary 10** p132
- **10A–D** Workbook p48

Reading and Writing

- **Portfolio 10** Happy birthday! Workbook p70
  Reading greetings cards; a thank-you email
  Writing messages on greetings cards; word order: review; a thank-you email



Work in groups of four. Read the rules. Then play the game!

Rules

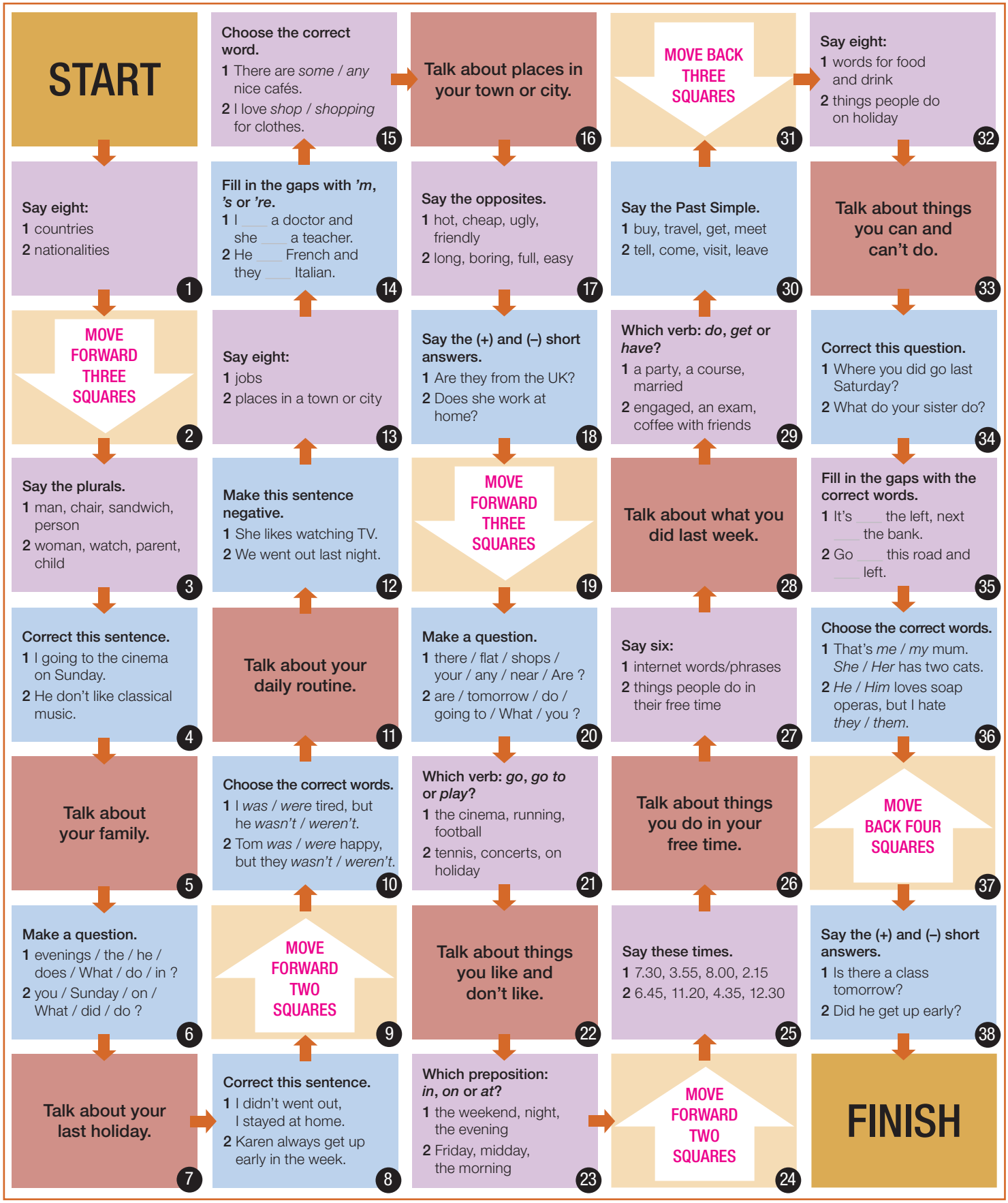
You need: One counter for each student; one dice for each group.

How to play: Put your counters on **START**. Take turns to throw the dice, move your counter and read the instructions on the square. The first student to get to **FINISH** is the winner.

Grammar and Vocabulary squares: The first student to land on a Grammar or Vocabulary square answers question 1. If the other students think your answer is correct, you can stay on the square. If the answer is wrong, move back to the last square you were on. The second student to land on the same square answers question 2. If a third or fourth student lands on the same square, he or she can stay on the square without answering a question.

Talk about squares: If you land on a Talk about square, talk about the topic for 15 seconds. If you can't talk for 15 seconds, move back to the last square you were on. If a second or third student lands on the same square, he or she also talks about the same topic for 15 seconds.

End of Course Review



Pair and Group Work: Student A

1A 10 p7

a Work on your own. Practise the phone numbers.

	you	your partner
	07395 623108	
	0161 288 9104	

b Work with your partner. Ask questions with *What's your … ?*. Write your partner's phone numbers in the table.

c Check your partner's table. Are the numbers correct?

4B 9 p33

a Work on your own. Make questions with these words.

1 a lot / you / Do / eat out ?
Do you eat out a lot?

2 DVDs / watch / you / Do / a lot of ?

3 in / live / you / a house or a flat / Do ?

4 food / like / you / Do / Italian ?

5 you / Do / old / computer / an / have ?

b Work with your partner. Ask your questions in **a**.

c Answer your partner's questions.

6B 7 p49

a Look at these questions about places near Susan's flat. Fill in the gaps with *Is*, *Are*, *a* or *any*. The answers are in brackets ( ).

1 *Is* there *a* post office near Susan's flat? (✓)
2 _____ there _____ good restaurants? (✗)
3 _____ there _____ bus stop? (✓)
4 _____ there _____ museums? (✗)
5 _____ there _____ cashpoint? (✓)

b Work with your partner. Ask your questions from **a**. Are your partner's answers correct?

c Answer your partner's questions. Are your answers correct?

7A 11 p55

a Work on your own. Write questions with *Do you like … ?* for the things in column A of the table.

1 Do you like horror films?

A		B (✓ or ✗)	C (✓ or ✗)
1			
2			
3			
4			
5			
6			

b Work on your own. Guess if your partner likes the things in the table. Put a tick (✓) or a cross (✗) in column B of the table.

c Work with your partner. Ask your questions from **a**. Put a tick (✓) or a cross (✗) in column C of the table. Are your guesses correct?

d Answer your partner's questions.

e Tell the class two things about your partner.

> Rafael doesn't like horror films. He loves playing video games.

1B 9 p9

a Look at the photo. Ask about people 1, 3 and 5. Write the names and countries.

Number 1. What's his name?

Where's he from?

b Answer your partner's questions about people 2, 4 and 6.

c Look at the photo for one minute. Remember the people's names and countries.

d Close your books. Ask and answer questions about the people.

Where's David from?

He's from the UK.



1 Name _____
Country _____

2 Name *David*
Country *the UK*

3 Name _____
Country _____

4 Name *Nina*
Country *Italy*

5 Name _____
Country _____

6 Name *Polly*
Country *the USA*

2B 9 p17

a Look at these photos. Write *yes / no* questions to check the information in **blue** about Roberto, Wendy and Alex.

Is Roberto Spanish?

b Work with your partner. Ask your questions from **a**. Tick (✓) the correct information. Change the wrong information.

c Answer your partner's questions about Silvio, Yi Chen and Omar.

Is Silvio Italian?

No, he isn't. He's Brazilian.

d Compare answers with another student A.

Roberto isn't Spanish. He's Mexican.

			
name	**Roberto**	**Wendy**	**Alex**
nationality	**Spanish?** _____	**American?** _____	**Russian?** _____
job	**a police officer?** _____	**a waitress?** _____	**a teacher?** _____
married or single	**married?** _____	**married?** _____	**married?** _____
			
name	**Silvio**	**Yi Chen**	**Omar**
nationality	Brazilian	Chinese	Egyptian
job	a taxi driver	a sales assistant	an actor
married or single	married	married	single

3A 13 p23



a Work on your own. Choose the correct words.

1 Where *is* / (*are*) Alice and Mike?
2 *Is* / *Are* the people very friendly?
3 *Is* / *Are* Alice and Mike in a big hotel?
4 Where *'s* / *are* the hotel?
5 *Is* / *Are* the rooms very big?
6 *Is* / *Are* it very cold?

b Check the answers in email A on p22.

c Work with your partner. Ask your questions about Alice and Mike in **a**. Are your partner's answers correct?

d Answer your partner's questions about Liz and Steve. Don't look at p23!

8B 10 p65

a Work on your own. Fill in the gaps with *was* or *were*.

1 Where *was* the last wedding you went* to?
2 When _____ it?
3 Who _____ the bride and groom?
4 How many people _____ at the wedding?
5 _____ the food good?
6 _____ any of your friends there?
7 _____ there a party after the wedding?
8 _____ there any music?

**went* = Past Simple of *go*

b Work with your partner. Ask your questions from **a**. Make notes on his or her answers.

c Answer your partner's questions about the last party you went to.

d Work with another student A. Tell him or her about the wedding your partner went to.



4C 9 p35

a You are a customer. Your partner is a shop assistant. Buy things a–d from your partner's shop. You start. How much do you spend?

Excuse me. Do you have any … ?
How much is this … , please?
How much are these … , please?
Can I have … , please?
No, that's all, thanks.
Here you are.

b You are a shop assistant. Your partner is a customer. He or she wants to buy things 1–4. Have a conversation with your partner. Your partner starts.

Yes, they're over there.
It's £… .
They're …p each.
Sure. Anything else?
OK, that's £… .



4D 8 p36

a Look at these film times. Work with your partner. Take turns to ask the times of the films. Write the times.

What time is *The Italian Teacher* on?

It's on at quarter past four, …

FILM TIMES

The Italian Teacher	4.15	_____	_____
Seven Sisters	2.55	5.15	8.50
Married or Single?	_____	7.20	_____
Beautiful Day	3.30	5.45	9.05
Monday to Friday	3.05	_____	_____
The Actor's Wife	3.45	6.50	9.15

b Check the times with your partner. Are they correct?

5A 8 p39

a Work on your own. Fill in the gaps in the questions in column A of the table. Use *Do* and these verbs.

~~get up~~ have sleep drink watch

A	B your partner's answer (✓ or ✗)
1 *Do* you *get up* before seven o'clock?	
2 _____ you _____ TV in the morning?	
3 _____ you _____ breakfast in a café?	
4 _____ you _____ a lot of coffee?	
5 _____ you _____ in the day?	

b Work with your partner. Ask questions 1–5. Put a tick (✓) or a cross (✗) in column B of the table.

Do you get up before seven o'clock?

Yes, I do. / No, I don't. I get up at about eight.

c Answer your partner's questions. Give more information if possible.

d Work with another student A. Tell him or her about your partner.

Uli gets up at about eight.

5B 8 p41

a Work on your own. Fill in the gaps in these questions about Nadine's routine. Use *does she* and the correct prepositions.

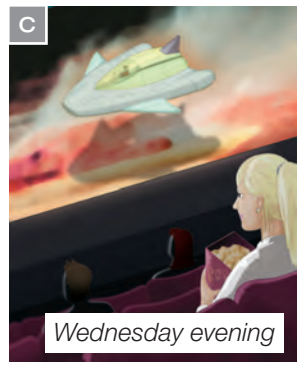
1 What time *does* *she* get up *in* the week?
2 What _____ _____ do ___ Wednesday afternoon?
3 _____ _____ have classes ___ Friday morning?
4 _____ _____ go out with friends ___ the weekend?
5 _____ _____ phone her mother ___ Sunday evening?

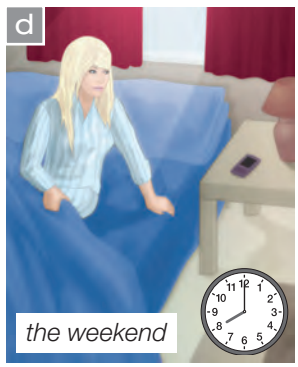
b Work with your partner. Ask your partner the questions in **a**.

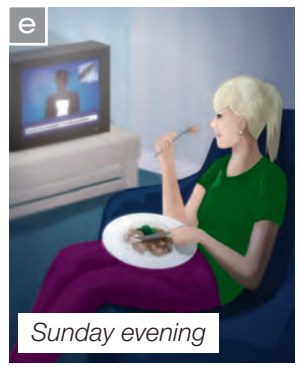
c Look at pictures a–e. Then answer your partner's questions.







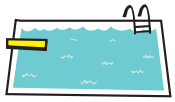




7B 10 p57

a Work on your own. Look at the things Megan and Harry can and can't do. Write questions with *Can* for the **pink** gaps in the table.

1 Can Megan speak German?

	 Megan	 Harry
1 		✗
2 	✓	
3 		✓
4 	✓	
5 		✗
6 	✓	
7 		✗
8 	✗	

b Work with your partner. Take turns to ask your questions from **a**. Fill in the gaps in the table with a tick (✓) or a cross (✗). You start.

c Compare tables with your partner. What can both children do?

9B 10 p73

a Work on your own. Make questions about Heidi with the words in column A of the table.

A	 B Heidi	 C Charlie
1 she / every / What / afternoon / do / did ? *What did she do every afternoon?*		(go) sightseeing
2 museums / visit / she / Did / any ?		✗
3 the evenings / she / do / did / What / in ?		(have) dinner in his hotel
4 she / did / around / How / travel ?		(rent) a car
5 buy / Did / presents / any / she ?		✓

b Work with your partner. Ask your questions from **a** about Heidi. Write the answers in column B of the table.

c Look at column C. Answer your partner's questions about Charlie. Use the Past Simple form of the verbs in brackets.

9C 7 p74

a You are at a station. You want to buy these tickets. Your partner is a ticket seller. Ask your partner questions and complete the table. The time now is 9 a.m.

ticket	price	time of next train	platform	time train arrives
two returns to Bath (you want to come back tomorrow)				
two singles to Bristol				

b You are a ticket seller. Your partner wants to buy some tickets. Look at this information. Answer your partner's questions.

place	price	time of next train	platform	time train arrives
Leeds	single: £28.20 return: £42.50	10.10	2	11.39
Manchester	single: £43.40 return: £55.80	9.25	5	12.41

Pair and Group Work: Student B

1A 10 p7

a Work on your own. Practise the phone numbers.

	you	your partner
	07902 715843	
	020 7911 6047	

b Work with your partner. Ask questions with *What's your … ?*. Write your partner's phone numbers in the table.

c Check your partner's table. Are the numbers correct?

4B 9 p33

a Work on your own. Make questions with these words.

a watch / you / Do / a lot / TV ?
Do you watch TV a lot?

b tennis / Do / play / you / or football ?
_____

c an / you / in / work / office / Do ?
_____

d Chinese / like / Do / food / you ?
_____

e mobile / have / phone / a / you / new / Do ?
_____

b Work with your partner. Answer his or her questions.

c Ask your questions in **a**.

6B 7 p49

a Look at these questions about places near Susan's flat. Fill in the gaps with *Is*, *Are*, *a* or *any*. The answers are in brackets ( ).

1 *Is* there *a* station near Susan's flat? (✗)
2 _____ there _____ shops? (✓)
3 _____ there _____ chemist's? (✓)
4 _____ there _____ nice cafés? (✗)
5 _____ there _____ supermarket? (✓)

b Work with your partner. Answer his or her questions. Are your answers correct?

c Ask your questions from **a**. Are your partner's answers correct?

7A 11 p55

a Work on your own. Write questions with *Do you like … ?* for the things in column A of the table.

a Do you like Chinese food?

A	B (✓ or ✗)	C (✓ or ✗)
a 		
b 		
c 		
d 		
e 		
f 		

b Work on your own. Guess if your partner likes the things in the table. Put a tick (✓) or a cross (✗) in column B of the table.

c Work with your partner. Answer his or her questions.

d Ask your questions from **a**. Put a tick (✓) or a cross (✗) in column C of the table. Are your guesses correct?

e Tell the class two things about your partner.

Katarina doesn't like Chinese food. She loves shopping for clothes.

1B 9 p9

a Look at the photo. Answer your partner's questions about people 1, 3 and 5.

b Ask about people 2, 4 and 6. Write the names and countries.

Number 2. What's his name?

Where's he from?

c Look at the photo for one minute. Remember the people's names and countries.

d Close your books. Ask and answer questions about the people.

Where's Sue from?

She's from Australia.

1 Name *Adam*
Country *Germany*

2 Name _____
Country _____

3 Name *Mario*
Country *Spain*



4 Name _____
Country _____

5 Name *Sue*
Country *Australia*

6 Name _____
Country _____

2B 9 p17

a Look at these photos. Write *yes / no* questions to check the information in **blue** about Silvio, Yi Chen and Omar.

Is Silvio Italian?

b Work with your partner. Answer his or her questions about Roberto, Wendy and Alex.

Is Roberto Spanish?

No, he isn't. He's Mexican.

c Ask your partner your questions from **a**. Tick (✓) the correct information. Change the wrong information.

d Compare answers with another student B.

Silvio isn't Italian. He's Brazilian.

			
name	**Silvio**	**Yi Chen**	**Omar**
nationality	**Italian?** _____	**Japanese?** _____	**Egyptian?** _____
job	**a taxi driver?** _____	**a musician?** _____	**a doctor?** _____
married or single	**married?** _____	**married?** _____	**married?** _____
			
name	**Roberto**	**Wendy**	**Alex**
nationality	Mexican	British	Russian
job	a police officer	a waitress	a manager
married or single	single	single	married

3A 13 p23



Liz and Steve

a Work on your own. Choose the correct words.

1 Where *is* / (*are*) Liz and Steve?
2 *Is* / *Are* the people very friendly?
3 *Is* / *Are* Liz and Steve in a big hotel?
4 Where *'s* / *are* the hotel?
5 *Is* / *Are* the rooms very nice?
6 *Is* / *Are* the hotel cheap?

b Check the answers in email B on p23.

c Work with your partner. Answer your partner's questions about Alice and Mike. Don't look at p22!

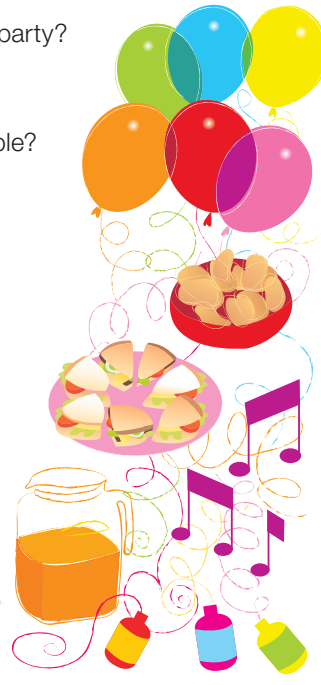
d Ask your questions about Liz and Steve in **a**. Are your partner's answers correct?

8B 10 p65

a Work on your own. Fill in the gaps with *was* or *were*.

1 Where *was* the last party you went* to?
2 _____ it a friend's party?
3 How many people _____ at the party?
4 _____ any of your family there?
5 When _____ the party?
6 _____ there any interesting people?
7 _____ the music good?
8 _____ there any food?

**went* = Past Simple of *go*



b Work with your partner. Answer his or her questions about the last wedding you went to.

c Ask your partner your questions from **a**. Make notes on his or her answers.

d Work with another student B. Tell him or her about the party your partner went to.

4C 9 p35

a You are a shop assistant. Your partner is a customer. He or she wants to buy things a–d. Have a conversation with your partner. Your partner starts.

Yes, they're over there.
It's £… .
They're £… each.
Sure. Anything else?
OK, that's £… .

b You are a customer. Your partner is a shop assistant. Buy things 1–4 from your partner's shop. You start. How much do you spend?

Excuse me. Do you have any … ?
How much is this … , please?
How much are these … , please?
Can I have … , please?
No, that's all, thanks.
Here you are.



4D 8 p36

a Look at these film times. Work with your partner. Take turns to ask the times of the films. Write the times.

What time is *Seven Sisters* on?

It's on at five to three, …

FILM TIMES

The Italian Teacher	4.15	7.00	9.25
Seven Sisters	2.55	_____	_____
Married or Single?	4.25	7.20	9.10
Beautiful Day	_____	5.45	_____
Monday to Friday	3.05	4.50	6.45
The Actor's Wife	_____	_____	9.15

b Check the times with your partner. Are they correct?

5A 8 p39

a Work on your own. Fill in the gaps in the questions in column A of the table. Use *Do* and these verbs.

~~get~~ eat work go have

A	B your partner's answer (✓ or ✗)
a *Do* you *get* home after six o'clock?	
b _____ you _____ dinner before nine?	
c _____ you _____ to bed after midnight?	
d _____ you _____ at the weekend?	
e _____ you _____ a lot of fruit?	

b Work with your partner. Answer his or her questions. Give more information if possible.

c Ask your partner questions a–e. Put a tick (✓) or a cross (✗) in column B of the table.

Do you get home after six o'clock?

Yes, I do. / No, I don't. I get home at about five.

d Work with another student B. Tell him or her about your partner.

Kwan gets home at about five.

5B 8 p41

a Work on your own. Fill in the gaps in these questions about Nadine's routine. Use *does she* and the correct prepositions.

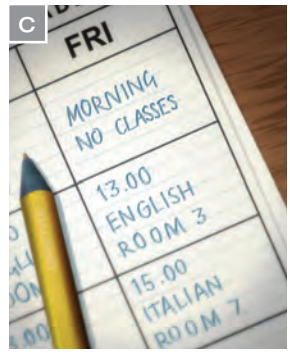
1 What time *does* *she* go to bed *in* the week?
2 _____ _____ have classes ___ Tuesday morning?
3 What _____ _____ do ___ Wednesday evening?
4 What time _____ _____ get up ___ the weekend?
5 _____ _____ eat out ___ Sunday evening?

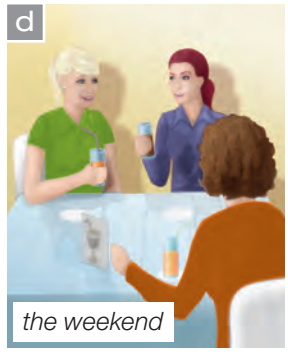
b Work with your partner. Look at pictures a–e. Then answer your partner's questions.

c Ask your partner the questions in **a**.







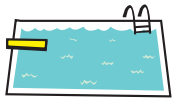




7B 10 p57

a Work on your own. Look at the things Megan and Harry can and can't do. Write questions with *Can* for the **pink** gaps in the table.

1 Can Harry speak German?

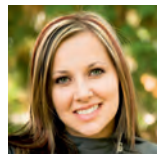
	 Megan	 Harry
1 	✓	
2 		✗
3 	✗	
4 		✓
5 	✗	
6 		✓
7 	✓	
8 		✗

b Work with your partner. Take turns to ask your questions from **a**. Fill in the gaps in the table with a tick (✓) or a cross (✗). Your partner starts.

c Compare tables with your partner. What can both children do?

9B 10 p73

a Work on your own. Make questions about Charlie with the words in column A of the table.

A	 B Charlie	 C Heidi
1 he / every / What / morning / do / did ? *What did he do every morning?*		(go) for a walk
2 museums / visit / he / Did / any ?		✓
3 the evenings / he / do / did / What / in ?		(have) dinner with her friends
4 he / around / did / travel / How ?		(go) by bus and taxi
5 buy / Did / presents / any / he ?		✗

b Work with your partner. Look at column C. Answer his or her questions about Heidi. Use the Past Simple form of the verbs in brackets.

c Ask your partner your questions from **a** about Charlie. Write the answers in column B of the table.

9C 7 p74

a You are at a station. You are a ticket seller. Your partner wants to buy some tickets. Look at this information. Answer your partner's questions. The time now is 9 a.m.

place	price	time of next train	platform	time train arrives
Bath	single: £29.50 return: £39.70	9.15	8	10.39
Bristol	single: £36.30 return: £45.50	10.19	6	11.55

b You want to buy these tickets. Your partner is a ticket seller. Ask your partner questions and complete the table.

ticket	price	time of next train	platform	time train arrives
two returns to Leeds (you want to come back next weekend)				
two singles to Manchester				

Pair and Group Work: Other activities

1D 7 p12

a Work with your partner. Look at the picture. Write the words and the number of people and things.

- [5] ch a i r s
- [ ] ta _ _ _ _
- [ ] me _
- [ ] wo _ _ _
- [ ] bo _ _ _
- [ ] pe _ _
- [ ] pe _ _ _ _ _
- [ ] ap _ _ _ _
- [ ] ba _ _
- [ ] mo _ _ _ _ _



b Work with another pair. Compare answers.

c Check on p134. Are your answers correct?

8A 6 p63

a Work on your own. Think about your life when you were ten. Write six sentences about you with *was* or *were*. Use these ideas or your own.

When I was ten,

- my favourite singer / band …
- my favourite food / drink …
- my favourite TV programme(s) …
- my favourite film(s) …
- I … happy / unhappy at school.
- I … good at (sports, languages …).
- I … always / usually / never late for class.
- my brother(s) / sister(s) … nice to me.

b Work with your group. Say your sentences. Are any of the other students' sentences true for you?

When I was ten, my favourite band was U2.

Me too!

c Tell the class two interesting things about other students in your group.

9A 9 p71

a Work on your own. Think about the last time you visited a different town or city. Write 6–8 sentences. Use these phrases and your own ideas.

- I (go) to …
  I went to Buenos Aires two months ago.
- I (go) there by …
- I (arrive) at … o'clock.
- I (travel) on my own / with my …
- When I was there I (visit) …
- I also (go) to …
- I (go) shopping and I (buy) …
- I (leave) there … and (get) home …
- I (be) there for … days / weeks.
- I (have) a good / great / terrible time.

b Work on your own. Practise your sentences until you can remember them.

c Work with your group. Tell each other about the last time you visited a different town or city.

d Tell the class two things about the place you visited.

Extra Practice 1

Language Summary 1 p114

1A p6

1 Choose the correct words.

A Hello, [1](I) / *my* 'm Andy. What's [2]*you* / *your* name?
B Hello, [3]*I* / *my* name's Kara.
A Nice to meet [4]*you* / *your*.
B [5]*You* / *Your* too.

A Hello, Caroline.
B Hi, Pia. How are [6]*you* / *your*?
A [7]*I* / *My* 'm fine, thanks. And [8]*you* / *your*?
B [9]*I* / *My* 'm OK, thanks.

A What's [10]*you* / *your* mobile number?
B It's 07700 900349.
A Thanks. And what's [11]*you* / *your* home number?
B It's 020 7946 0682.

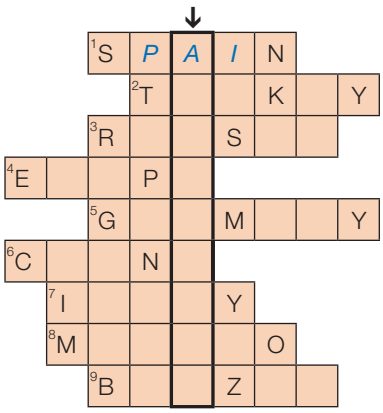
A Goodbye, Pia.
B Bye, Jo. See [12]*you* / *your* soon.
A Yes, see [13]*you* / *your*.

2 Write the numbers.

0 z*e*r*o*
1 o _ _
2 t _ _
3 t _ _ _ _
4 f _ _ _
5 f _ _ _
6 s _ _
7 s _ _ _ _
8 e _ _ _ _
9 n _ _ _
10 t _ _
11 e _ _ _ _ _
12 t _ _ _ _ _

1B p8

3 Write the letters in countries 1–9. Find the country (↓).



4 Fill in the gaps with *he*, *his*, *she* or *her*.

A What's [1] *his* name?
B [2]_____ name's Johnny.
A Where's [3]_____ from?
B [4]_____'s from the UK.

A What's [5]_____ name?
B [6]_____ name's Anna.
A Where's [7]_____ from?
B [8]_____'s from the USA.

1C p10

5 Write the vowels (*a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*) in these things. Then choose *a* or *an*.

1 (a) / an b *a* g
2 **a** / **an** _ ppl _
3 **a** / **an** d _ ct _ _ n _ ry
4 **a** / **an** n _ t _ b _ _ k
5 **a** / **an** b _ _ k
6 **a** / **an** _ mbr _ ll _
7 **a** / **an** p _ nc _ l
8 **a** / **an** p _ n
9 **a** / **an** m _ b _ l _

6 Make questions and sentences with these words.

1 surname / your / What's ?
What's your surname?
2 your / name / What's / first ?
_____
3 that / you / How / spell / do ?
_____
4 *bag* / mean / does / What ?
_____
5 English / this / in / What's ?
_____
6 know / don't / sorry, / I / I'm .
_____
7 you / *Egypt* / do / spell / How ?
_____
8 repeat / please / you / that, / Can ?
_____
9 understand / don't / sorry, / I / I'm .
_____

1D p12

7 **a** Find 12 people or things (→↓).

W	O	V	B	O	Y	N	W
D	F	M	A	N	C	E	A
E	D	L	B	B	H	J	T
S	I	A	Y	G	A	R	C
S	A	N	D	W	I	C	H
H	R	G	A	W	R	A	K
J	Y	G	I	R	L	M	D
C	O	M	P	U	T	E	R
P	T	A	B	L	E	R	Z
I	E	L	W	O	M	A	N

b Write the plurals of the words in **7a**.

boys _____
_____ _____
_____ _____
_____ _____
_____ _____
_____ _____

Progress Portfolio 1

Tick (✓) the things you can do in English.

- ☐ I can say hello and goodbye.
- ☐ I can ask people's names.
- ☐ I can introduce people.
- ☐ I can say phone numbers.
- ☐ I can ask and say where people are from.
- ☐ I can say the alphabet.
- ☐ I can ask questions in class.
- ☐ I can say when I don't understand.
- ☐ I can ask people to repeat things.
- ☐ I can use plurals.

Extra Practice 2

Language Summary 2 p116

2A p14

1 Write the nationalities.

1 Australia *Australian*
2 Mexico _____
3 Italy _____
4 the UK _____
5 China _____
6 Brazil _____
7 the USA _____
8 Egypt _____
9 Spain _____
10 Turkey _____
11 Russia _____
12 Germany _____

2 Choose the correct words.

1 Libby *aren't* / (*isn't*) from the USA, she *'re* / *'s* from the UK.
2 You *aren't* / *isn't* in this class. You *'m* / *'re* in room D.
3 Ross *aren't* / *isn't* his first name, it *'re* / *'s* his surname.
4 I *'m not* / *isn't* from Mexico, I *'m* / *'re* from Colombia.
5 She *'re* / *'s* a Spanish teacher, but she *aren't* / *isn't* from Spain.

2B p16

3 Write the jobs. Use *a* or *an*.



1 *a teacher* 6 _____
2 _____ 7 _____
3 _____ 8 _____
4 _____ 9 _____
5 _____

4 Make questions with these words.

1 name / your / 's / What ?
What's your name?
2 you / Where / from / are ?
_____
3 's / What / job / your ?
_____
4 from / 's / Where / he ?
_____
5 job / What / his / 's ?
_____
6 What / name / 's / her ?
_____
7 's / job / What / her ?
_____

5 **a** Fill in the gaps with *Am*, *Are* or *Is*.

1 *Am* I in this room?
2 _____ he a manager?
3 _____ you a student?
4 _____ I in this class?
5 _____ you from the UK?
6 _____ she a teacher?

b Write the short answers to the questions in **5a**.

1 ✓ Yes, *you are* .
2 ✗ No, _____ .
3 ✓ _____ .
4 ✗ _____ .
5 ✗ _____ .
6 ✓ _____ .

2C p18

6 Write questions with *your* for these answers.

A 1 *What's your first name?*
B It's Eve.
A 2 _____
B Smith.
A 3 _____
B I'm British.
A 4 _____
B It's 12 Lee Road, London.
A 5 _____
B It's 07700 900195.
A 6 _____
B It's e.smith@webnet.com.

2D p20

7 Write the numbers.

13 t *h i r* t *e e* n
14 f _ _ _ _ _ n
15 f _ _ _ _ _ n
16 s _ _ _ _ _ n
17 s _ _ _ _ _ _ _ n
18 e _ _ _ _ _ _ _ n
19 n _ _ _ _ _ _ n
21 t _ _ _ _ _ - o _ _
33 t _ _ _ _ _ _ - t _ _ _ _
47 f _ _ _ _ - s _ _ _ _
56 f _ _ _ _ - s _ _
64 s _ _ _ _ - f _ _ _
72 s _ _ _ _ _ _ - t _ _
89 e _ _ _ _ _ - n _ _ _
95 n _ _ _ _ _ - f _ _ _
100 a h _ _ _ _ _ _

8 Fill in the gaps with *'m*, *'s*, *is* or *are*.

A How old [1] *is* your computer?
B It[2] _____ three years old.

A How old [3] _____ she?
B She[4] _____ 23.

A How old [5] _____ you?
B I[6] _____ 31.

Progress Portfolio 2

Tick (✓) the things you can do in English.

- ☐ I can say nationalities.
- ☐ I can ask and answer questions with *be*.
- ☐ I can talk about jobs.
- ☐ I can ask for and give personal information.
- ☐ I can say and understand numbers 0–100.
- ☐ I can talk about how old people and things are.

Extra Practice 3

Language Summary 3 p118

3A p22

1 Write the adjectives. Then write their opposites.

1	wne	n*ew*	o *ld*
2	lamsl	s_____	b_____
3	docl	c_____	h_____
4	ygul	u_____	b_____
5	paceh	c_____	e_____
6	dogo	g_____	b_____

2 Fill in the gaps with *are*, *'re*, *is*, *'s*, *isn't* or *aren't*.

Hi Ivan

Eva and I [1] *are* (+) at an English school in London! It[2] _____ (+) a good school, but it [3] _____ (–) cheap. The teacher, Ann, [4] _____ (+) very good and the students [5] _____ (+) friendly. We[6] _____ (+) in a hotel near the school. The rooms [7] _____ (+) nice, but they [8] _____ (–) very big!

Love Olga

3 **a** Make questions with these words.

1 are / Eva and Olga / Where ?
Where are Eva and Olga?
2 the / cheap / Is / school ?
_____
3 teacher / good / the / Is / very ?
_____
4 the / Are / friendly / students ?
_____
5 's / hotel / Where / the ?
_____
6 the / big / Are / rooms / very ?
_____

b Read the email in **2** again. Answer the questions in **3a**.

1 *They're in London.*
2 _____
3 _____
4 _____
5 _____
6 _____

3B p24

4 Read about Tony's family. Then fill in the gaps with the correct family words.



I'm Tony and my wife's name is Ella. Our son's name is Jim and he's married to Sarah. Their children are Mia and Bob.

1 Bob is Mia's *brother* .
2 Mia is Bob's _____ .
3 Tony is Mia's _____ .
4 Jim is Bob's _____ .
5 Sarah is Mia's _____ .
6 Ella is Bob's _____ .
7 Bob is Sarah's _____ .
8 Tony is Ella's _____ .
9 Mia is Jim's _____ .
10 Jim and Sarah are Mia and Bob's _____ .

5 Choose the correct words.

1 What's *you* / (*your*) name?
2 This is *he* / *his* mobile.
3 What is *they* / *their* surname?
4 *She* / *Her* is *I* / *my* teacher.
5 Is *he* / *him* from Germany?
6 This is *we* / *our* house.
7 Are *they* / *their* in your hotel?
8 *We* / *Our* aren't in *he* / *his* English class.

3C p26

6 Read this conversation in a café. Complete the words.

A Can I [1]h *e l p* you?
C Yes, a [2]c _ _ f _ _ and a cheese [3]s _ _ _ w _ _ _ , please.
A [4]E _ _ in or [5]t _ _ _ away?
C [6]T _ _ _ away, please.
A Sure. Anything [7]e _ _ _ ?
C No, that's [8]a _ _ , thanks.
A OK, that's £3.20, please.
C [9]T _ _ _ _ you very [10]m _ _ _ .
A You're [11]w _ l _ _ e.

3D p28

7 **a** Write the food and drink words.



1	c*heese*	7	c_____
2	f_____	8	p_____
3	e_____	9	t_____
4	f_____	10	m_____
5	v_____	11	b_____
6	r_____	12	s_____

b Look at the photo on p28. Check your answers.

Progress Portfolio 3

Tick (✓) the things you can do in English.

- ☐ I can use adjectives and *very*.
- ☐ I can understand a simple email.
- ☐ I can talk about families.
- ☐ I can talk about money and prices.
- ☐ I can understand a simple price list.
- ☐ I can buy food and drink in a café.
- ☐ I can talk about food and drink I like.

Extra Practice 4

Language Summary 4 p120

4A p30

1 Choose the correct verbs.

1 (*like*) / *work* football
2 *study* / *live* English
3 *like* / *work* in an office
4 *have* / *study* two children
5 *work* / *like* rock music
6 *study* / *live* languages
7 *have* / *live* in a flat
8 *have* / *work* a car
9 *live* / *have* in the centre of the city
10 *work* / *like* for an Italian company

2 Make these sentences negative.

1 You're a teacher.
You aren't a teacher.
2 You like Mexican food.
3 I have a new phone.
4 I'm from the USA.
5 We're musicians.
6 We live in Australia.
7 Tim and Joe are brothers.
8 They work in London.
9 She's a sales assistant.

4B p32

3 Match the verbs in A to the words and phrases in B.

A	B
go to go watch	DVDs concerts shopping
play eat watch	TV video games out
go to go play	tennis the cinema out with friends

4 Make questions with these words.

1 do / work / Where / you ?
Where do you work?
2 to / Do / concerts / go / you ?
3 do / music / they / like / What ?
4 do / you / live / Where ?
5 watch / they / Do / TV / a lot ?
6 you / food / like / Do / Chinese ?
7 have / we / today / a class / Do ?
8 do / free time / your / do / What / you / in ?

4C p34

5 Write the letters in these things in a shop.

1 a p *o* st *c a* rd
2 a m _ p
3 sw _ _ ts
4 b _ tt _ _ ies
5 a m _ g _ z _ _ e
6 a b _ _ th _ _ y c _ _ d
7 ch _ w _ _ g g _ m
8 t _ ss _ es
9 a b _ x of ch _ c _ l _ _ es

6 Read this conversation in a shop. Choose the correct words.

C Excuse [1]*you* / (*me*). [2]*Do* / *Are* you have any postcards?
A Yes, [3]*their* / *they're* over there.
C OK, thanks. How much [4]*is* / *are* they?
A [5]*They're* / *There* 70p each.
C Can I have [6]*these* / *that* four postcards, please?
A Sure. Anything [7]*each* / *else* ?
C Yes, [8]*this* / *those* newspaper.
A OK, [9]*that* / *that's* £3.80.
C [10]*Here* / *Where* you are.
A [11]*Thanks* / *Thank* very much. Goodbye.

4D p36

7 Write the days of the week. Then put them in order 1–7.

oMydna *Monday* *1*
uynSda
dhrsTayu
aStuyadr
ydraiF
seuyTad
daWenydes

8 Write the times.



a *ten* *past* three
b _____ _____ four
c _____ _____ seven
d _____ _____ one
e _____ _____ five
f _____ _____

Progress Portfolio 4

Tick (✓) the things you can do in English.

- ☐ I can talk about things I have and don't have.
- ☐ I can say where I live and work.
- ☐ I can talk about my free time.
- ☐ I can ask people about their free time.
- ☐ I can buy things in a shop.
- ☐ I can say the days of the week.
- ☐ I can tell the time.

Extra Practice 5

Language Summary 5 p122

5A p38

1 Read these sentences about a typical day. Complete the verbs.

1 I g e t up at 7.00 in the week.
2 I h _ _ _ breakfast at 7.30.
3 I l _ _ _ _ home at 8.30.
4 I s _ _ _ _ work at 9.00.
5 I h _ _ _ lunch at 1.00.
6 I f _ _ _ _ _ work at 5.30.
7 I g _ _ home at 6.00.
8 I h _ _ _ dinner at 8.00.
9 I g _ to bed at midnight.
10 I s _ _ _ _ for seven hours.

2 Put the verbs in the Present Simple.

My best friend's name [1] *is* (be) Rob and he [2]_____ (live) in London. He [3]_____ (work) in a hotel, but he [4]_____ (not like) his job very much. In his free time he [5]_____ (go) to the cinema and [6]_____ (watch) football on TV a lot. He also [7]_____ (study) Spanish on Wednesdays. He [8]_____ (have) a very beautiful flat, but he [9]_____ (not have) a car. Rob and I [10]_____ (talk) a lot on the phone, but I [11]_____ (not see) him very much because he [12]_____ (work) at the weekend.

5B p40

3 Choose the correct words.

1 (on) / *at* Thursday
2 *in* / *at* the morning
3 *on* / *in* Thursday morning
4 *in* / *at* night
5 *on* / *in* the afternoon
6 *in* / *at* the weekend
7 *in* / *at* the week
8 *at* / *on* midday
9 *on* / *in* the evening
10 *on* / *in* Sunday evening
11 *in* / *at* midnight
12 *at* / *on* half past six

4 Fill in the gaps with *does* or *do*.

1 What music *does* your son like?
2 Where _____ he work?
3 When _____ you start work?
4 What _____ your sister do?
5 When _____ Mike get home?
6 Where _____ Jo and Ed live?
7 What time _____ you get up?

5 **a** Make questions with these words.

1 Alice / cheese / eat / Does ?
Does Alice eat cheese?
2 fish / like / your / Does / sister ?
_____
3 concerts / Do / go / they / to ?
_____
4 in / work / he / Does / a shop ?
_____
5 have / Does / dad / a car / your ?
_____
6 like / rock / you / music / Do ?
_____

b Write short answers to the questions in **5a**.

1 ✓ Yes, *she does* .
2 ✗ No, _____ .
3 ✗ _____ .
4 ✓ _____ .
5 ✗ _____ .
6 ✓ _____ .

5C p42

6 Read these conversations in a restaurant. Complete the words.

W Hello. Are you [1]r *e a d y* to [2]o _ _ _ _ ?
C Yes. Can I [3]h _ _ _ the vegetable lasagne, please?
W Certainly. What [4]w _ _ _ _ you like to [5]d _ _ _ _ ?
C An orange [6]j _ _ _ _ , please.
W [7]W _ _ _ _ you like a [8]d _ _ _ _ _ t ?
C Yes, the [9]s _ _ _ _ b _ _ _ y ice cream, please.
W Of [10]c _ _ _ _ e .
C Thank you.

7 Write the food and drink words.



1 b*urger* and c_____
2 m_____ p_____
3 c_____ s_____
4 f_____ s_____
5 a_____ p_____ and c_____
6 b_____ of m_____ w_____

5D p44

8 Tick (✓) the correct sentences. Change the wrong sentences.

1 I'm late for class never .
2 They eat out every weekend. ✓
3 Lisa's brother always is busy.
4 My dad gets up usually early.
5 She goes to LA every year.
6 We every week go shopping.
7 I sometimes work on Sundays.

Progress Portfolio 5

Tick (✓) the things you can do in English.

- ☐ I can talk about my routine and other people's routines.
- ☐ I can use time phrases.
- ☐ I can ask about other people's routines and free time.
- ☐ I can understand a simple menu.
- ☐ I can order food and drink in a restaurant.
- ☐ I can use frequency adverbs.

Extra Practice 6

Language Summary 6 p124

6A p46

1 Write the letters in these places in a town or city.

1 a p *a r* k
2 a sho _ p _ _ g c _ nt _ e
3 a t _ _ at _ e
4 a s _ at _ _ n
5 a r _ v _ _
6 an a _ rp _ _ t
7 a b _ _ ld _ _ g
8 a b _ s s _ at _ _ n
9 a m _ s _ _ m

2 Choose the correct words.

1 There *'s* / (*are*) a lot of old buildings in Bath.
2 There *'s* / *are* a station.
3 There are *a* / *a lot of* hotels.
4 There *'s* / *are* five theatres.
5 There are *some* / *a* nice parks.
6 There are *a lot of* / *a* cafés.
7 There *'s* / *are* a shopping centre.
8 There's *an* / *some* airport in Bristol.

6B p48

3 Write the places in a town or city.

1 dora — r*oad*
2 sub spot — b_____ s_____
3 kabn — b_____
4 kemtar — m_____
5 repsukemtar — s_____
6 stop focife — p_____ o_____
7 rasque — s_____
8 'sithcmes — c_____

4 Read about Ian's home town. Fill in the gaps with *'s*, *are*, *isn't* or *aren't*.

Ian lives in Barton, in the UK. There [1] *are* some good shops in Barton, but there [2] _____ a supermarket. There [3] _____ also a nice park, but there [4] _____ any old buildings. In Ian's road there's a post office, but there [5] _____ a bank. There [6] _____ also two cafés near his house, but there [7] _____ any restaurants.

5 **a** Fill in the gaps with *Is*, *Are*, *a* or *any*.

1 *Are* there *any* shops in Barton?
2 _____ there _____ supermarket?
3 _____ there _____ old buildings?
4 _____ there _____ bank in Ian's road?
5 _____ there _____ restaurants near Ian's house?
6 _____ there _____ post office in Ian's road?
7 _____ there _____ cafés near Ian's house?

b Read about Barton in **4** again. Then write the short answers to the questions in **5a**.

1 *Yes, there are.*
2 _____ .
3 _____ .
4 _____ .
5 _____ .
6 _____ .
7 _____ .

6C p50

6 Read this conversation at Bath tourist information centre. Fill in the gaps with these phrases.

~~can I~~	When is	minutes away
we book	per person	show me
Do you have	where's	It's open

A Hello, [1] *can I* help you?
T Yes, please. [2] _____ a map of Bath?
A Yes, of course. Here you are.
T Thank you. And [3] _____ the Thermae Bath Spa?
A It's in Hot Bath Street.
T Can you [4] _____ on this map?
A Yes, here it is. It's about ten [5] _____ .
T Thanks. [6] _____ it open?
A [7] _____ from 9 a.m. to 9.30 p.m. every day.
T And can [8] _____ a walking tour here?
A Yes, you can. They're £10 [9] _____ .

7 Write the words for these things.



1 *a camera* 5 _____
2 _____ 6 _____
3 _____ 7 _____
4 _____ 8 _____

6D p52

8 Find 14 words for clothes (→↓).

J	A	C	K	E	T	S	C
E	T	V	O	Q	R	K	O
A	S	U	I	T	A	I	A
N	Z	T	S	H	I	R	T
S	D	B	J	E	N	T	L
T	R	O	U	S	E	R	S
E	E	O	M	X	R	B	H
K	S	T	P	O	S	U	O
G	S	S	E	M	T	I	E
S	H	I	R	T	F	N	S

Progress Portfolio 6

Tick (✓) the things you can do in English.

- ☐ I can talk about places in my town or city.
- ☐ I can ask about places in other towns or cities.
- ☐ I can say what is in my bag.
- ☐ I can ask for information at a tourist information centre.
- ☐ I can talk about clothes and colours.
- ☐ I can talk about my favourite things and people.

Extra Practice 7

Language Summary 7 p126

7A p54

1 Write the letters in these things people like or don't like.

1 s o a p o p er a s
2 ani _ a _ s
3 ho _ _ or fi _ _ s
4 da _ ci _ g
5 f _ y _ n _
6 cla _ _ ic _ l mu _ i _
7 wa _ c _ ing sp _ _ t on _ V
8 vi _ it _ ng n _ w pl _ _ es
9 s _ o _ pi _ g f _ r clo _ _ es

2 Fill in the gaps with these verbs.

~~like~~ likes love loves hate hates don't like doesn't like

1 I *like* watching TV.
2 I _____ tennis.
3 Colin _____ rice.
4 He _____ pizza.
5 Jo _____ eating out.
6 We _____ football.
7 She _____ coffee.
8 I _____ ice cream.

3 Choose the correct words.

1 Where are (*they*) / *them*?
2 *She* / *Her* doesn't know *we* / *us*.
3 Does *he* / *him* like *I* / *me*?
4 *I* / *me* live with *she* / *her*.
5 *We* / *Us* never see *they* / *them*.
6 Do you work with *he* / *him*?

7B p56

4 Tick (✓) the correct sentences. Change the wrong sentences.

1 Their children can't ~~to~~ swim.
2 My mum can speak French. ✓
3 He can't speaks Japanese.
4 I can't understand it.
5 Do you can play tennis?
6 Lydia can dance very good.
7 I can't go to work today.
8 Can you use a computer?
9 Paul can play well football.

5 Look at the pictures. Write sentences with *can*.



1 He *can speak Spanish.*
2 She _____ .
3 She _____ .
4 He _____ .
5 She _____ .
6 He _____ .
7 They _____ .
8 She _____ .
9 He _____ .

7C p58

6 Complete the words in these conversations.

A [1]E *x c u s e* me. [2]W _ _ _ _ 's the Queen's Hotel?
B Go [3]a _ _ _ _ this road and turn [4]r _ _ _ _ . That's Park Road. The Queen's Hotel is on your [5]l _ _ _ , [6]o _ _ _ _ _ _ e the theatre.
A Thank you very much.
B You're [7]w _ _ _ _ _ e .

A Excuse me. Is there a supermarket [8]n _ _ _ here?
B Yes, there is. Go [9]a _ _ _ _ this road and turn [10]l _ _ _ . The supermarket is on your [11]r _ _ _ _ , [12]n _ _ _ to the chemist's.
A Thanks very much. Oh, and [13]w _ _ _ _ 's the post office?
B It's [14]o _ _ _ there, [15]n _ _ _ the bank.
A Oh, yes. I [16]c _ _ see it. Thanks a lot.

7D p60

7 Read about how Vanessa uses the internet. Fill the gaps with these verbs.

~~send~~ download chat receive write search book sell listen watch watching reading

I [1] *send* and [2]_____ a lot of emails every day and I [3]_____ a blog called 'Vanessa's Life' – all of my friends like [4]_____ it. I use the internet to [5]_____ for information, of course, and I always [6]_____ hotels and flights online. I [7]_____ TV programmes on my laptop and I love [8]_____ videos on YouTube. I also [9]_____ music onto my phone and then I [10]_____ to it on the train. I [11]_____ to my sister online a lot – she lives in Australia – and I also buy and [12]_____ DVDs online. Yes, I love the internet!

Progress Portfolio 7

Tick (✓) the things you can do in English.

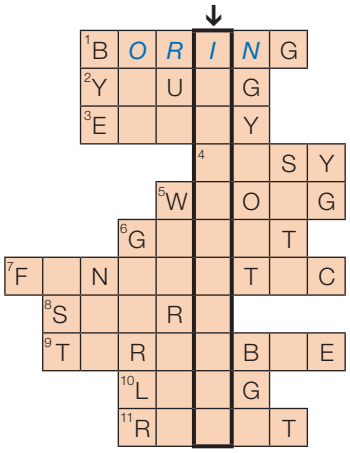
- ☐ I can talk about things I like and don't like.
- ☐ I can ask about things other people like and don't like.
- ☐ I can say things I can and can't do.
- ☐ I can ask what other people can do.
- ☐ I can ask for, give and understand simple directions.
- ☐ I can understand a simple interview.
- ☐ I can talk about things I do online.

Extra Practice 8

Language Summary 8 p128

8A p62

1 Write the letters in adjectives 1–11. Find the adjective (↓).



2 Choose the correct words.

1 My dad *was* / *were* a doctor.
2 These shoes *wasn't* / *weren't* very expensive. They *was* / *were* only £20.
3 I *wasn't* / *weren't* at home on Sunday, I *was* / *were* at work.
4 My grandparents *was* / *were* from Italy.
5 That *wasn't* / *weren't* a very good film.
6 I'm sorry we *wasn't* / *weren't* at your birthday party. We *was* / *were* in France.
7 We *was* / *were* in Germany last week, but the weather *wasn't* / *weren't* very good.

8B p64

3 **a** Fill in the gaps with *last*, *yesterday*, *in* or *ago*.

Edward was …

a at work an hour *ago* .
b in Los Angeles _____ week.
c at a party _____ evening.
d in Sydney two years _____ .
e at university _____ 2007.
f in India a month _____ .
g born _____ 1988.
h in Brazil _____ Sunday.

b Put sentences a–h in order.

1a, 2c, …

4 Make questions with these words.

1 born / Where / you / were ?
Where were you born?
2 your / was / born / son / Where ?
_____
3 were / on your / you / Where / last birthday ?
_____
4 first / English / was / teacher / your / Who ?
_____
5 was / class / When / English / first / your ?
_____
6 were / three / you / ago / years / Where ?
_____

5 Fill in the gaps with *Was* or *Were*. Then write the short answers.

1 A *Were* you at home last night?
B ✓ *Yes, I was.*
2 A _____ Nick's mother British?
B ✗ No, _____ .
3 A _____ the concert good?
B ✓ _____ .
4 A _____ your sons at the party?
B ✗ _____ .
5 A _____ Alice's brother there?
B ✓ _____ .
6 A _____ you at work yesterday?
B ✗ _____ .

8C p66

6 Fill in the gaps with these words.

~~What~~	Why	Where
good	think	meet
let's	shall	past

A [1] *What* shall we do on Sunday?
B [2] _____ don't we play tennis?
A No, I don't [3] _____ so.
B OK, [4] _____ go to the park.
A Yes, that's a [5] _____ idea. [6] _____ shall we meet?
B Let's [7] _____ at the café.
A What time [8] _____ we meet?
B About half [9] _____ two.
A OK. See you then!

7 Write the dates.

7th	*seventh*	15th	
1st		12th	
5th		19th	
9th		20th	
2nd		26th	
3rd		30th	
10th		31st	

8D p68

8 Write the numbers.

a a thousand *1,000*
b a million _____
c six hundred and seventy-three _____
d four thousand, five hundred _____
e nine hundred and forty-seven _____
f seven hundred and fifty thousand _____
g fifty million _____
h ninety-nine thousand, nine hundred and ninety _____

Progress Portfolio 8

Tick (✓) the things you can do in English.

- ☐ I can make sentences and ask questions with *was* and *were*.
- ☐ I can say and understand years and past time phrases.
- ☐ I can say and ask about months and dates.
- ☐ I can make and respond to suggestions.
- ☐ I can say and understand big numbers.
- ☐ I can understand a simple magazine article.

Extra Practice 9

Language Summary 9 p130

9A p70

1 Write the words for transport.



1 *a taxi*
2 _____
3 _____
4 _____
5 _____
6 _____
7 _____
8 _____

2 **a** Write the Past Simple of these verbs. Which verbs are regular?

get up *got up*
leave _____
watch _____
have _____
write _____
start _____
buy _____
meet _____
play _____
go _____

b Fill in the gaps with the Past Simple of the verbs in **2a**.

Yesterday …

1 I *got up* at 7 a.m.
2 I _____ home at 8 a.m.
3 I _____ work at 9 a.m.
4 I _____ pasta for lunch.
5 I _____ some new clothes.
6 I _____ a friend after work.
7 I _____ TV in the evening.
8 I _____ video games.
9 I _____ some emails.
10 I _____ to bed.

9B p72

3 Match the verbs in A to the words and phrases in B.

A	B
go	a car
rent	on holiday
stay	photos
take	swimming
go	in a hotel
go for	the beach
go to	with friends
stay	sightseeing
go	around
travel	a walk

4 Make these sentences negative.

1 I went out last night.
I didn't go out last night.
2 She told me her surname.
_____
3 I was at school yesterday.
_____
4 He came home last night.
_____
5 We were in Poland in 2012.
_____
6 They liked the food.
_____

5 Fill in the gaps with *did*, *didn't*, *was*, *wasn't*, *were* or *weren't*.

A What [1] *did* you do last weekend?
B I went to Lara's birthday party.
A [2]_____ you have a good time?
B Yes, I [3]_____ . It [4]_____ a very good party.
A [5]_____ Sue at the party?
B No, she [6]_____ . But her two brothers [7]_____ there.
A OK. And [8]_____ you see James or Felicity?
B No, I [9]_____ .
A [10]_____ Lara's parents there?
B No, they [11]_____ . I think they [12]_____ on holiday.
A And what time [13]_____ the party finish?
B At about 4 a.m.!

9C p74

6 Read this conversation at a ticket office. Write the words.

C A [1]r *e t u r n* to Bath, please.
TS When do you want to [2]c _ _ _ [3]b _ _ _ ?
C On Saturday.
TS OK. [4]T _ _ _ 's £38.90, please. Here's your [5]t _ _ _ _ _ .
C Thank you. What time's the [6]n _ _ _ train?
TS [7]T _ _ _ _ 's one at 3.15.
C Which [8]p _ _ _ _ _ _ m ?
TS [9]P _ _ _ _ _ _ m 2.
C What time does it [10]a _ _ _ _ _ ?
TS At 4.50.

9D p76

7 Write questions about the words in **bold** in sentences 1–8. Use these question words.

~~When~~ What Who
Where Why How old
How much How many

1 I met John **two years ago**.
When did you meet John?
2 My favourite actor is **Brad Pitt**.
_____
3 We have **four** children.
_____
4 I was born **in Berlin**.
_____
5 My car is **11 years old**.
_____
6 My jacket was **£100**.
_____
7 I bought **a new dress**.
_____
8 I'm tired **because I started work at 5 a.m.**!
_____

Progress Portfolio 9

Tick (✓) the things you can do in English.

- ☐ I can talk about transport.
- ☐ I can talk about the past.
- ☐ I can understand a simple newspaper article.
- ☐ I can talk about things I do on holiday.
- ☐ I can ask and answer questions about the past.
- ☐ I can buy train tickets at a station.
- ☐ I can do a simple quiz.
- ☐ I can make questions with question words.

Extra Practice 10

Language Summary 10 p132

10A p78

1 Cross out the wrong words.

1 **start** *a new job / ~~a city~~ / school*
2 **leave** *married / university / your job*
3 **do** *a course / a flat / an exam*
4 **move** *house / to Bath / a job*
5 **get** *engaged / school / married*
6 **look for** *a flat / engaged / a new job*

2 Fill in the gaps with the positive (+) or negative (–) form of *be going to* and these verbs.

~~watch~~	study	see
play	have	get up
stay	buy	move

1 (+) I'*m going to watch* a DVD when I get home.
2 (+) Megan _____ tennis next Saturday.
3 (+) I _____ in a hotel next weekend.
4 (–) They _____ house this year.
5 (+) We _____ English next year.
6 (–) Chris _____ early tomorrow.
7 (–) I _____ my brother this week.
8 (+) They _____ dinner in a French restaurant.
9 (–) We _____ a new car.

3 Choose the correct words in these time phrases.

1 *on / (in)* **2030**
2 *tomorrow / next* **month**
3 *in / at* **November**
4 *next / tomorrow* **evening**
5 *in / next* **week**
6 *tomorrow / in* **afternoon**
7 *on / in* **Monday**
8 *at / on* **March 30th**
9 *in / tomorrow* **night**
10 *in / next* **year**
11 *tomorrow / next* **day**
12 *in / next* **2020**

10B p80

4 Write the phrases with *have*, *watch*, *go* or *go to*.



1 g*o* s*h*o*p*p*i*n*g*
2 g_ to the g_ _
3 w_ _ _ _ the n_ _ _
4 g_ s_ _ _ _ _ _ _
5 h_ _ _ d_ _ _ _ _ with f_ _ _ _ _ _
6 g_ r_ _ _ _ _ _
7 h_ _ _ a p_ _ _ _
8 g_ to a p_ _ _ _
9 w_ _ _ _ s_ _ _ _ on T_

5 Write questions with *be going to*.

1 What / you / do this evening?
What are you going to do this evening?
2 When / they / move house?
_____
3 Who / he / stay with?
_____
4 Why / you / leave your job?
_____
5 Where / she / go on holiday?
_____

6 Fill in the gaps and write the short answers.

1 A *Are* you going to call her?
B ✓ Yes, _____ .
2 A ___ Maria going to rent a car?
B ✗ No, _____ .
3 A ___ they going to buy the flat?
B ✓ _____ .
4 A ___ he going to leave his job?
B ✗ _____ .
5 A ___ I going to see you again?
B ✓ _____ .

10C p82

7 Find eight adjectives for feelings. (→↓)

H	A	P	P	Y	J	O	S
B	Q	A	N	G	R	Y	A
O	E	X	C	I	T	E	D
R	I	K	G	V	I	S	F
E	H	U	N	G	R	Y	M
D	E	A	J	L	E	N	B
S	C	A	R	E	D	U	C

8 Fill in the gaps with these words.

~~Have~~	See	in	you	with
good	much	lot	luck	

A [1] *Have* a [2] _____ holiday.
B Thanks a [3] _____ .
A [4] _____ you [5] _____ two weeks.
B Yes, see [6] _____ . And good [7] _____ [8] _____ your new job.
A Thanks very [9] _____ . Bye!

Progress Portfolio 10

Tick (✓) the things you can do in English.

- ☐ I can talk about future plans.
- ☐ I can use future time phrases.
- ☐ I can understand a simple conversation about the future.
- ☐ I can ask other people about their future plans.
- ☐ I can say how I feel.
- ☐ I can say goodbye and good luck.

Audio and Video Scripts

CD1 4

A

SUE Hello, my name's Sue. What's your name?
MARIO Hello, I'm Mario.
S Nice to meet you.
M You too.

B

ADAM Hi, Meg.
MEG Hi, Adam. How are you?
A I'm fine, thanks. And you?
M I'm OK, thanks.

CD1 8

A

A What's your home number?
B It's 020 7599 6320.
A 020 7599 6320.
B Yes, that's right.

B

A What's your mobile number?
B It's 07655 421769.
A 07655 421769.
B Yes, that's right.
A Thanks.

C

A What's your phone number in Madrid?
B It's 0034 91 532 67 53.
A 0034 91 …
B … 532 67 53.
A OK. Thank you.

CD1 11

EMEL Where are you from, Stefan?
STEFAN I'm from Russia. And you?
E I'm from Turkey.

CD1 12

Where are you from? | I'm from Russia. | And you? | I'm from Turkey.

CD1 13

ANSWERS 2a 3d 4c

CD1 14

A His name's Marcel and he's from France.
B Her name's Ayumi and she's from Japan.
C His name's Leon and he's from Poland.
D Her name's Mai and she's from Thailand.
E His name's Ricardo and he's from Colombia.
F Her name's Gita and she's from India.

CD1 16

1 u v 2 y i 3 g j 4 b v 5 a r 6 e i 7 b p 8 t d 9 u q 10 v w

VIDEO 1.1 CD1 17

SALLY Hello. What's your first name, please?
PABLO It's Pablo.
S What's your surname?
P Ortega.
S How do you spell that?
P O-r-t-e-g-a.
S Thank you, Pablo. Welcome to the class.
P Thank you.

VIDEO 1.2 CD1 18

1

SALLY Hello. What's your first name, please?
DOROTA It's Dorota.
S How do you spell that?
D D-o-r-o-t-a.
S Thanks. What's your surname?
D It's Kowalska.
S And how do you spell that?
D K-o-w-a-l-s-k-a.
S K-o-w-a-l-s-k-a. Thank you, Dorota. Welcome to the class.
D Thank you.

2

SALLY Hello. What's your first name, please?
KHALID It's Khalid.
S How do you spell that?
K K-h-a-l-i-d.
S Thanks. And what's your surname?
K Nazeer.
S OK. And how do you spell that, please?
K N-a-z-double e-r.
S N-a-z-double e-r. Thank you, Khalid. Welcome to the class.
K Thank you.

CD1 19

first name → What's your first name, please?
surname → What's your surname?
spell that → How do you spell that?

VIDEO 1.3 CD1 21

1

DOROTA Excuse me.
SALLY Yes, Dorota?
D What does *answer* mean?
S I ask a question, you say the answer.
D I'm sorry, I don't understand.
S OK. Question – What's your first name? Answer – It's Dorota.
D Ah, OK. I understand now. Thank you.

2

PABLO Excuse me.
SALLY Yes, Pablo?
P What's this in English?
S It's a pencil.
P Can you repeat that, please?
S Pencil.
P Pencil.
S Good.

3

SALLY What's the answer to question 1? Pablo?
PABLO I'm sorry, I don't know.
S Dorota?
DOROTA It's Brazil.
S That's right. Good.
KHALID Excuse me. How do you spell *Brazil*?
S B-r-a-z-i-l.
K OK. Thank you.

CD1 26

LINDA My name's Linda and I'm from London. I'm an English teacher at a language school near here. What's in my bag? Well, there are two books and an English dictionary. And here's my notebook, er, a pen – no, three pens – and my mobile.

BILL Hi, I'm Bill and I'm from Miami, in the USA. I'm in London for two days for work. What's in my bag? Well, my mobile, of course, and photos of my family – and, er, a pen. And, er, what else? Well, here's my lunch – an apple and a sandwich – no, two sandwiches!

CAROLINE Hello. My name's Caroline and I'm from Sydney, in Australia. I'm in the UK on holiday. In my bag there's, um, let's see, … my camera, two books about London, a notebook … um, oh yes, a pencil. Oh, and an umbrella, of course! Well, I am in England!

CD1 31

ANSWERS **A** British **B** German **C** Brazilian **D** American

CD1 32

I'm → I'm British.
You're → You're a student.
He's → He's German.
She's → She's Brazilian.
It's → It's American.

CD1 33

I'm not → I'm not American.
You aren't → You aren't a teacher.
He isn't → He isn't from Berlin.
She isn't → She isn't Australian.
It isn't → It isn't a Mercedes.

CD1 35

TINA Matt, do you want to see some photos of my friends?
MATT Sure.
T OK. This is a friend from Australia.
M What's his name?
T Gary. He's a doctor in Sydney.
M Oh, OK.
T And this is my friend Marco. He's a musician. He's very good.
M Is he Spanish?
T No, he isn't. He's from Mexico.
M Oh, right.
T And this is my friend Emma.
M That's a nice photo. Where's she from?
T She's from France. But she's a teacher in London now.

M Really? Hmm. She's very beautiful.
T Yes, she is – and she's married.
M Oh, right.
T And this is my friend Sofia. She's from Italy.
M Is she a musician?
T No, she isn't. She's an actress.
M Oh, OK. Is she married?
T Um, no, she's single.
M Really? What's her phone number?
T Matt!

CD1 38

Mr → Mr Brown | Mrs → Mrs King | Ms → Ms King | Ms → Ms Roberts | Miss → Miss Roberts

CD1 39

A
RECEPTIONIST Good morning, Mr Brown.
MR BROWN Good morning, Amanda.

B
MR BROWN Good afternoon, Mrs King.
MRS KING Good afternoon.

C
WAITER Good evening, sir.
MR BROWN Good evening.

D
MR BROWN Thank you very much. Good night.
WAITER Good night, sir.

CD1 41

dot co dot u k → at city gym dot co dot u k → peter dot west at city gym dot co dot u k
dot com → at gmail dot com → frank robson one two three at gmail dot com
dot net → at webmail dot net → kim price nine at webmail dot net
dot org → at email dot org → rebecca dot taylor at email dot org

VIDEO 2 CD1 42

PETER Well, that's our gym. What do you think?
KAREN Yes, it's very nice. So, how do I join?
P Well, first I need some personal information.
K Of course.
P OK. What's your first name, please?
K It's Karen.
P And what's your surname?
K It's Wendell.
P OK, um, how do you spell that, please?
K It's W-e-n-d-e-double l.
P Thank you. And what's your nationality?
K I'm British.
P OK. And what's your address?
K It's 7 Hatherley Road, Liverpool, L11 7HR.
P How do you spell Hatherley?
K H-a-t-h-e-r-l-e-y.
P So that's 7 Hatherley Road, Liverpool, L11 7HR.
K Yes, that's right.
P Ok, thanks. Right, er, next question. What's your mobile number?
K It's 07854 864247.
P 07854 … um …
K 864247.
P Thanks. And what's your email address?
K It's k.wendell9@gmail.com.
P So that's k.wendell9@gmail.com.
K Yes, that's right.
P OK, thanks a lot. Right, now let's talk about what type of membership is right for you.

CD1 43

What's your first name, please?
What's your surname?
What's your nationality?
What's your address?
What's your mobile number?
What's your email address?

CD1 48

1
WOMAN 1 Good morning, Tony.
TONY Good morning, Mrs Blake.
W1 Oh, is this your cat?
T Yes, his name's Charlie.
W1 How old is he?
T He's thirteen.

2
MAN 1 How old is your house, Tony?
TONY It's a hundred years old, I think.
M1 Oh, right.

3
TONY And this is Emily.
WOMAN 2 Hello, Emily.
EMILY Hello.
W2 How old are you?
E I'm nine.

4
MAN 2 Is that your car?
TONY Yes, it is.
M2 How old is it?
T It's twenty-one years old.
M2 Wow!

5
TONY Bonnie … come here … good girl.
WOMAN 3 What a nice dog. How old is she?
T She's seven. Or forty-nine, in dog years!

CD1 49

ANSWERS **2** is **3** old **4** are **5** I'm

CD1 55

1 We aren't from Italy, we're from Spain.
2 It's a new hotel, but it isn't very nice.
3 He's a doctor and he isn't married.
4 You aren't Australian, you're American.
5 I'm a manager and she's a musician.
6 They're actors, but they aren't very good.

CD1 59

1 Nick is Fiona's husband.
2 Kevin is Nick's son.
3 Fiona is Kevin's mother.
4 Anne is Fiona's daughter.
5 Nick is Anne's father.
6 Anne is Kevin's sister.
7 Nick and Fiona are Kevin and Anne's parents.

CD1 61

MARY I'm Mary and this is Sid, my husband. I'm 65 and Sid is 64 – like the Beatles song! This is a photo of our daughter Fiona and her family. Fiona's a teacher at a big school in Manchester. She's 43 now, or is it 44? No, she's 43. Her husband's name is Nick and he's a doctor. And I think he's a very good father.
And these are their two children – our grandchildren. This is Anne, our granddaughter. She's 14 and she's a very good musician. And this is our grandson, Kevin. He's 11 – oh no, he's 12 now. It's a very nice photo, I think.

CD1 62

ANSWERS 2b 3e 4c 5a 6d

CD1 63

a seventeen pounds **b** seventy p **c** a hundred dollars **d** twenty-one euros **e** thirty-five cents **f** twenty-one dollars fifty **g** three euros seventy-five **h** seven pounds sixty

CD1 64

1
A Excuse me. How much is this watch?
B It's twenty-five pounds.

2
A This is very nice. How much is it?
B It's sixty-four dollars.

3
A How much are the pens?
B They're seventy p.
A OK. Two, please.

4
A These bags are beautiful. How much are they?
B They're forty-eight pounds fifty.
A OK, thank you.

5
A They're nice.
B Yes, but they're very expensive.
A How much are they?
B They're ninety-five euros.
A Oh …

CD1 66

a coffee | a cappuccino | an espresso | a tea | a mineral water | an orange juice | a croissant | an egg sandwich | a cheese and tomato sandwich | a tuna salad

VIDEO 3 CD1 67

ASSISTANT Hello. Can I help you?
CUSTOMER 1 Er, yes. An orange juice and a cheese and tomato sandwich, please.
A Sure. Anything else?
C1 No, that's all, thanks.
A Eat in or take away?

C1 Take away, please.
A OK, that's four pounds fifty-five, please.
C1 Here you are.
A OK. Enjoy your meal.
C1 Thanks a lot.
A You're welcome. Bye.
C1 Bye.

ASSISTANT Hi. Can I help you?
CUSTOMER 2 Yes, two cappuccinos, please.
A Sure. Anything else?
C2 Yes. A croissant and an egg sandwich, please.
A OK. Eat in or take away?
C2 Eat in, please.
A OK, that's eight pounds sixty, please.
C2 Here you are.
A Thank you. OK, here's your food. I'll bring the cappuccinos to your table.
C2 Thank you very much.
A You're welcome. Right, two cappuccinos …

CD1 68

Can I help you?
Yes, two cappuccinos, please.
Sure. Anything else?
Yes, a croissant and an egg sandwich, please.
No, that's all, thanks.
Eat in or take away?
Eat in, please.
Take away, please.
OK, that's eight pounds sixty, please.
Thank you very much.
Thanks a lot.
You're welcome.

CD1 71

FIONA What food and drink does my family like? Well, my husband Nick and I like a lot of the same things. We love coffee, but we like it black, not white. And we drink a lot of tea – it's very good for you, they say. And food, well, we don't eat meat, but we eat a lot of fish.
Our children, Anne and Kevin, well, they like eggs and they eat a lot of pasta. And they're children, so they love chocolate, of course!

CD2 4

2 live 3 have 4 don't live 5 live 6 work
7 like 8 don't like 9 study 10 like

CD2 8

1 Do you go to the cinema?
2 What food do you like?
3 Where do you go shopping?
4 Do you play video games?

CD2 9

Where do you live?
What music do you like?
Do you go to concerts?
Do you like Mexican food?
Do you go to the cinema?
What food do you like?
Where do you go shopping?
Do you play video games?
Yes, I do.
No, I don't.

CD2 11

this → this map → How much is this map?
these → these birthday cards → How much are these birthday cards?
that → that big box of chocolates → How much is that big box of chocolates?
those → those batteries → How much are those batteries?

VIDEO 4 CD2 12

ANSWERS 1 £5.75 2 £2.99 3 £9.34 4 £1.79 5 £8.75 6 £12.33

CD2 13

Excuse me. Do you have any maps of London?
Yes, they're over there.
How much is this map?
It's £5.75.
How much are these birthday cards?
They're £1.79 each.
Can I have that box of chocolates and these cards, please?
Sure. Anything else?
Yes, these sweets, please.
No, that's all, thanks.
OK, that's £12.33.
Here you are.
Thanks a lot.
Thanks very much.

CD2 15

a second | a minute | an hour | a day | a week | a month | a year

CD2 17

1
WOMAN Excuse me.
MAN Yes?
W What time is it, please?
M It's twenty to three.
W Thank you.

2
STUDENT Federico?
FEDERICO Yes?
S What time is your English class?
F It's at half past eight.

3
ANNOUNCER And the time is now six o'clock. Here is today's news, read by Graham Robertson.

4
SOPHIE Goodbye, Colin.
COLIN Bye, Sophie. See you at quarter to twelve tomorrow.
S Yes, see you.

5
TEACHER OK, that's it. Thanks a lot. See you on Wednesday at two thirty.
STUDENTS OK. / See you. / Bye. / Cheers.

CD2 19

ANSWERS **b** Friday and Saturday **c** 32 **d** morning **e** afternoon **f** Friday 13th **g** Tuesday 13th **h** 7 hours **i** 11½ hours **j** Sundays **k** Tuesdays **l** Thursdays

CD2 24

ANSWERS **b** 7.45 **c** 8.15 **d** 9.00 **e** 12.45 **f** 5.30 **g** 6.15 **h** 7.30

CD2 26

like, likes | play, plays | start, starts | finish, finishes | have, has | study, studies | love, loves | go, goes | eat, eats | watch, watches | drink, drinks | read, reads

CD2 27

ANSWERS **2** doesn't work **3** gets up **4** doesn't have **5** has **6** goes **7** leaves **8** starts **9** finishes **10** doesn't eat **11** has **12** gets **13** watches **14** don't work **15** have **16** talk

CD2 29

TOM Here you are, Carol. A cheese sandwich and a cappuccino.
CAROL Thanks a lot, Tom. Oh look, there's Nadine!
T Who's Nadine?
C She works in the mobile phone shop with me. Nadine! Hi!
NADINE Hello, Carol! How are you?
C I'm fine, thanks. Nadine, this is my brother, Tom.
N Nice to meet you, Tom.
T You too. So, um, you work in the mobile phone shop with Carol.
N Yes, that's right. But I don't work in the week, only at the weekend.
T What do you do in the week?
N I'm a student at the university. I study English and Italian.
T Oh, OK. Where are you from?
N I'm from Germany. From Frankfurt.
T And where do you live in Manchester?
N I live near the university with two other students.
C Do you like Manchester?
N Yes, I do. The people are nice and there are a lot of things to do here.
T What do you do in your free time?
N I play tennis and, er, I go to the cinema a lot. And what about you, Tom? Are you a student?
T No, I'm a waiter. I work in a restaurant …

CD2 32

chicken salad | vegetable lasagne | burger and chips | mushroom pizza | apple pie and cream | fruit salad | chocolate ice cream | strawberry ice cream | vanilla ice cream | a bottle of mineral water | still | sparkling | an orange juice | a coffee | a tea

VIDEO 5 CD2 33

MARTIN I don't know what to have.
LOUISE The lasagne looks nice.
M Yes, maybe.
WAITER Good evening. Are you ready to order?
L Yes. Can I have the chicken salad, please?
M And can I have the mushroom pizza?
W Certainly. What would you like to drink?
L An orange juice for me, please.
M And can we have a bottle of mineral water?
W Still or sparkling?
M Sparkling, please.
W OK. Thanks very much.

L That was very nice, thank you.
M Yes, the pizza was very good.
W Thank you very much. Would you like a dessert?
L Not for me, thanks.
M The apple pie for me, please.
L And two coffees, please.
W Of course.

M Excuse me. Can we have the bill, please?
W Of course.
M Thanks a lot. (to Louise) Would you like to go to Cambridge?
L This weekend? Yes, that's a good idea.
M OK. A weekend in Cambridge. Fantastic! (to waiter) Thank you.

CD2 35

always | usually | sometimes |
not usually | never |
every day | every week | every month |
every year |
every morning | every afternoon |
every evening | every night |
every Sunday | every Friday evening |
every six weeks | every four years

CD2 37

BRUCE What do you usually do on Sundays, Amy?
AMY Well, I usually do the same things every Sunday. I always get up at about seven o'clock.
B That's very early for a Sunday!
A Yes, but I like mornings. I always have breakfast with my husband, Lucas.
B Do you always have the same breakfast?
A Yes, we do. We have eggs, orange juice and lots of coffee.
B That sounds good.
A Yes, it is. And after breakfast my sister, Becky, usually phones me from England. It's afternoon there, of course.
B Right.
A We usually talk for about half an hour, then I do my Spanish homework.
B Really? You study Spanish?
A Yes, I go to a class every Thursday evening.
B Oh, right. Is your Spanish good?
A Well, it's not bad. And we usually go to Lucas's parents for lunch.
B Oh, nice.
A And we watch a DVD every Sunday evening. It's a great way to finish the weekend.
B Well, I think you have a very nice Sunday routine.
A Yes, I love Sundays. And what about you? What's your Sunday routine?

CD2 42

Listening Test (see Teacher's Book)

CD2 45

ANSWERS 2 are 3 's 4 are 5 's 6 are 7 's 8 are

CD2 47

SUSAN Well, here we are, Isabel. Come in. Welcome to my home.
ISABEL Thanks, Susan. Oh, what a beautiful flat!
S Thanks a lot.
I Do you like living here?
S Yes, I do. It's a nice road and the people are very friendly.
I That's good. Are there any shops near here?
S Yes, there are. In this road there's, um, a small supermarket, a chemist's and a post office.
I Is there a bank?
S No, there isn't. But there's a cashpoint at the post office. And there are a lot of banks in the centre of Bath, of course.
I OK. Are we near the city centre?
S Yes, it's only two miles from here.
I Oh, right. And can I get to the centre by train?
S No, there isn't a station near here, but, um, there are buses to the city centre every ten minutes. The bus stop's near the post office.
I That's good to know. And what about places to eat?
S Well, there aren't any good restaurants near here, but, um, there are some very nice restaurants in the centre.
I Great! Maybe we can go out for dinner this evening.
S Yes, that's a good idea. Right, this is your room …

CD2 49

There's an expensive market.
There are some old buildings.
There isn't an airport.
There aren't any museums.
Is there a post office?
Yes, there is.
No, there isn't.
Are there any nice old cafés?
Yes, there are.
No, there aren't.

VIDEO 6 CD2 51

MARTIN Good morning.
ASSISTANT Hello. Can I help you?
M Yes, please. Do you have a map of Cambridge city centre?
A Yes, of course. Here you are.
M Thanks a lot.
LOUISE And when is Kettle's Yard art gallery open?
A It's open from 11.30 a.m. to 5 p.m.
L Is it open every day?
A No, it's closed on Mondays.
L OK. Thanks.
A Can I help you with anything else?
M Er, yes, please. Where's the Fitzwilliam Museum?
A It's in Trumpington Street.
M Can you show me on this map?
A Yes, of course. Here it is. It's about five minutes away.
M Thank you.
L Er, one more thing, if that's OK. We want to see the university. Can we book a walking tour here?
A Yes, of course. They start at 11 a.m. and 1 p.m. every day.
L How much are they?
A They're £17.50 per person.
L OK, thanks a lot. We'll think about it.
A No problem. Have a nice day.
L You too.
M Bye.
A Goodbye.

CD2 53

2 When 3 from 4 to 5 Is it 6 on 7 where's 8 in 9 map 10 Here it is. 11 afternoon 12 of 13 here you are 14 book 15 at 16 day 17 are 18 person

CD2 56

LISA My favourite colour is pink and this is my favourite dress. I love this coat too, and these shoes. I have about … about thirty pairs of shoes at home, but I never wear trainers. I don't think they look good on girls.
BRAD I usually wear jeans, a T-shirt and, um, these trainers. My clothes are usually blue or black, and I never wear brown. Oh, and this is my favourite jacket, this black one. It's about five years old and I love it!
WAYNE I love shopping for clothes and I have about ten suits at home. I always wear a suit and tie for work, and, er, this is my favourite shirt, this blue one. But I never wear jeans. They don't look good on me.
MONICA I usually wear a skirt for work, like today, and I love wearing jumpers when it's cold. And these are my favourite boots. I wear them all the time. But, um, but I never wear dresses. I don't like them.

CD2 57

My favourite colour is pink.
This is my favourite jacket.
These are my favourite boots.
What's your favourite colour?
Who's your favourite actor?

CD2 63

ANSWERS 2 her 3 it 4 him 5 them 6 me

CD2 66

1 I can play the guitar.
2 You can't cook.
3 He can play basketball.
4 She can't drive.
5 We can't speak French.
6 They can sing very well.

CD2 67

MRS TAYLOR Hello, Natalia. My name's Gillian Taylor. Nice to meet you.
NATALIA You too.
MRS T Right, we want an au pair to help us with our two children, Megan and Harry.
N OK. How old are they?
MRS T Megan's twelve and Harry's ten.
N Right.
MRS T So, er, I have some questions if that's OK.
N Yes, of course.
MRS T Great. OK. Can you cook?
N Yes, I can. I love cooking and I often cook dinner for my family at home.
MRS T That's good. Can you drive?
N Yes, I can.
MRS T OK, great. And can you speak French or German? The children both study French at school and Megan starts German next year.
N Um, I can't speak German, but I can speak French.
MRS T Oh, that's good. And what about free time activities? Can you swim?
N Yes, I can. I love swimming.
MRS T And can you play tennis?
N No, I can't. But I can play football.
MRS T Oh, that's good. The children both love playing football. And what about music? Can you play the piano?
N No, I can't. But I can sing and I can play the guitar.
MRS T Oh, right. Megan plays the guitar too. Maybe you can help her.
N Yes, of course.
MRS T OK, one last question.
N Yes, Mrs Taylor?
MRS T When can you start?

VIDEO 7 CD3 2

ANSWERS 1 museum 2 museum 3 on 4 next to 5 café 6 on 7 next to 8 post office 9 near 10 can 11 bank 12 in 13 bank 14 left

CD3 3

Excuse me. Where's the museum?
Excuse me. Is there a bank near here?
Go along this road and turn left.
Go along this road and turn right.
That's Park Street.
The museum is on the right, next to the theatre.
The bank is on the left, opposite the station.
It's over there, near the cinema.

CD3 4

ANSWERS 1 me 2 here 3 right 4 on 5 near 6 Where's 7 over 8 next to 9 near 10 along 11 right 12 hotel

CD3 6

INTERVIEWER Excuse me?
SAM Yes?
I Can I ask you some questions about how you use the internet?
S Yes, sure.
I Great, thanks a lot. OK. First question. Do you watch TV programmes online?
S Well, I watch videos online, but not TV programmes. I love YouTube. It's my favourite website.
I OK, thanks. And what about the radio? Do you listen to the radio online?
S Er, no, I don't. I never listen to the radio.
I OK. And are you on Facebook?
S Yes, I am. I'm on Twitter too, but I don't use it very much.
I Right. Do you chat to friends and family online?
S Yes, sometimes. My sister lives in Poland and we chat online every week.
I OK. Do you buy and sell things online?
S Yes, I do. I buy DVDs on Amazon and then sell them again on eBay.
I And do you use the internet to book flights or holidays?
S No, I don't. My wife always does that.
I OK. Two more questions. Do you read people's blogs?
S Er, no, I don't. Sorry. I don't like blogs very much.
I And the last question. Do you download music?
S Yes, I do, and then I listen to it on my phone when I'm on the train.
I OK, thanks a lot, that's great.
S No problem. Bye.

CD3 12

I was at the World Cup Final.
We were near the Opera House.
The stadium wasn't full.
They weren't very happy.
I was very young at the time.
It was a great match!
It was a fantastic New Year!
There were some amazing fireworks!
The concert wasn't very long.

CD3 15

FRIEND Sunil, are you busy on Sunday?
SUNIL Yes, I am, sorry. It's my wedding anniversary on Sunday.
F Oh, happy anniversary!
S Thanks a lot. It's amazing that my wedding was five years ago.
F Was it here in the UK?
S No, it wasn't. It was in Mumbai, in India.
F Really?
S Yes. Pria was born in London, but her father's parents live in Mumbai.
F Right. And how old were you and Pria on your wedding day?
S I was 28 and Pria was 24.
F Oh. Was it a big wedding?
S Yes, it was. There were two hundred and fifty people there.
F Oh, wow! Were all your family at the wedding?
S No, they weren't. My sister was in the USA, so she wasn't there. But my parents and my two brothers were there.
F And was there a party after the wedding?
S Yes, there was – for three days!
F Three days?! That's amazing!
S Yes, there was fantastic Indian food and a lot of dancing. I was very tired at the end!
F I'm sure you were. So what are your plans for Saturday?

CD3 16

Where was the wedding?
How old were Sunil and Pria?
How many people were at the wedding?
Where was Sunil's sister?
Was she at the wedding?
Yes, she was.
No, she wasn't.
Were they at the wedding?
Yes, they were.
No, they weren't.
Where was Pria born?
She was born in London.
When were you born?
I was born in nineteen ninety-one.

CD3 21

1
A What's the date today?
B It's June 22nd.
A Thanks a lot.

2
A When's your birthday?
B March 30th.
A Really? That's my birthday too!

3
A When's your wedding anniversary?
B It's on October 3rd.
A Oh, that's next week!

4
A When do you start your new job?
B On April 1st.
A Really? Er … good luck!

VIDEO 8 CD3 22

DANNY Here's your croissant. The cappuccinos are on their way.
KAREN Thanks a lot.
D No problem. What time's your driving test?
K Eleven thirty. But I have a driving lesson at half past ten.
D Oh, OK. What's this?
K It's a present. Happy birthday for yesterday!
D Really? Thanks, Karen. Wow, what a great shirt! Thanks a lot.
K I'm pleased you like it.
ASSISTANT Here are your cappuccinos.
D Thank you very much.
K So, what shall we do this evening? We need to celebrate your birthday.
D I don't know. What do you think?
K Why don't we go out for dinner? We can go to that nice Mexican restaurant near your flat.
D No, I don't think so. I go there every week.
K OK, well, let's go to a club.
D Maybe. But they're always very busy on Fridays.
K Hmm.
D I know! Why don't we go to the cinema?
K Yes, that's a good idea. Do you know what's on?
D Well, there's that new Johnny Depp film. People say it's very good.
K Great! Where shall we meet?
D Let's meet at the cinema.
K OK. What time shall we meet?
D About seven thirty. Then we can have a drink first.
K Yes, good idea. So, tell me about your birthday. What was your best present?
D Well, this shirt, of course!

CD3 23

What shall we do this evening?
Let's go to a club.
Why don't we go to the cinema?
Yes, that's a good idea.
Maybe.
No, I don't think so.
Where shall we meet?
Let's meet at the cinema.
What time shall we meet?
About seven thirty.

CD3 24

GEORGE What shall we do tomorrow evening, Jessica?
JESSICA Why don't we go to the cinema?
G No, I don't think so.
J OK. Let's go to that Indian restaurant in Old Street.
G Yes, that's a good idea. Where shall we meet?
J Let's meet at the restaurant.
G OK. What time shall we meet?
J About quarter to eight.
G Great! See you there!

CD3 26

a 365 b 999 c 17,000 d 62,400 e 250,000 f 1,200,000 g 18,000,000

CD3 27

ANSWERS a 30,000 b 125,000 c 150,000 d 1,500 e 177,500 f 5 million g 70 million

CD3 28

OWEN Do you like going to festivals, Ella?
ELLA Yes, I do. I go to about four festivals every year.
O Really? What's your favourite?
E Er, probably Glastonbury, I think.
O Oh, why's that?
E Well, I like it because there are lots of different things you can do. There are lots of famous bands on every day, of course. But when you don't want to listen to music, you can go to the theatre, watch a film or go shopping in the market.
O That sounds interesting.
E Yes, and the best thing about the festival is all the nice people you meet. I love sitting in cafés and talking to people I don't know – and I always make a lot of new friends. And what about you? Do you go to festivals?
O Well, my brother and I went to the Rio Carnival in February.
E Really? Wow! How was it?
O It was amazing! There were thousands of people in the street every night, and everyone was dancing and having a fantastic time. And I love Brazilian music.
E Yes, me too.
O But the hotel was expensive, and it was sometimes difficult to sleep because of the noise.
E Yes, of course. And can you dance the samba like a Brazilian?
O Er, no, I can't. My dancing is terrible! But I have a lot of new friends from the festival that I can chat to on Facebook!

CD3 34

visit, visited | watch, watched | play, played | hate, hated | walk, walked | work, worked | live, lived | want, wanted | love, loved | talk, talked | start, started | finish, finished

CD3 35

bought | came | got | gave | went | had | left | met | told | wrote

CD3 37

1 I liked your photos. I like your photos.
2 We live in Spain. We lived in Spain.
3 They arrived at ten. They arrive at ten.
4 We talk every day. We talked every day.
5 I want to go home. I wanted to go home.
6 They played football a lot. They play football a lot.

VIDEO 9.1 CD3 43 CD3 44

SALLY A return to London, please.
TICKET SELLER When do you want to come back?
S Tomorrow evening.
TS OK. That's £46.70, please. Here are your tickets.
S Thanks. What time's the next train?
TS There's one at 10.23.
S OK. Which platform?
TS Platform three.
S Right. And what time does it arrive in London?
TS At 11.56.
S Thanks a lot. Bye. [on phone] Oh, hi there. Yes, I just got my ticket. I get to London at about midday. So, where shall we meet?

CD3 45

ANSWERS 2 That's 3 your 4 next 5 at 6 Which 7 does 8 At 9 a lot

VIDEO 9.2 CD3 46

SALLY Hi, Rob. How are you?
ROB I'm fine, thanks. Did you have a good weekend?
S Yes, I did, thanks.
R What did you do?
S I went away for the weekend.
R Oh, nice! Where did you go?
S I went to London to see my brother, Chris.
R Did you have a good time?
S Yes, I love going to London. It's an amazing city.
R So, what did you do there?
S Well, on Saturday afternoon we went shopping in Oxford Street. It was very busy, of course, but I love shopping there. And in the evening we went to the theatre in the West End.
R Oh, really? What did you see?
S *Les Misérables*. You know, the musical.
R Oh, right. Did you enjoy it?
S Yes, it was fantastic! We had a great evening. And on Sunday morning we went to the National Gallery. Chris doesn't like art galleries very much, but I love them. Then we had lunch in a café in Leicester Square with some friends from university.
R That sounds nice.
S Yes, it was. And what about you? What did you do at the weekend?
R Well, on Saturday evening we went to that new Turkish restaurant on Station Road.
S Oh yes, I know it. Did you have a good time?
R Yes, the waiters were very friendly and the food was fantastic!
S Oh, it's time to go – we're late for class!
R Oh, yes! See you later.

CD3 47

Did you have a good weekend?
What did you do at the weekend?
Where did you go?
What did you do there?
Did you have a good time?
What did you see?
Did you enjoy it?

CD3 48

JACKIE Mark, do you want to do a quiz?
MARK Yes, I love doing quizzes. What's the first question?
J OK. What is the capital of Australia? Is it Canberra, Sydney or Melbourne?
M That's an easy question. It's Sydney, of course.
J No, you're wrong. It's Canberra.
M Really? Oh.
J Here's the second question. Where were the two thousand and eight Olympic Games? Were they in London, Athens or Beijing?
M I think they were in London.
J No, you're wrong again, Mark! The London Olympics were in twenty twelve. The two thousand and eight Olympics were in Beijing.
M Oh yes, of course.
J Question three. How old is the Earth? Is it ten billion years old, four and a half billion years old or one and a half billion years old?
M Er, I think it's ten billion years old.
J No, it's four and a half billion years old. You aren't very good at this, are you Mark?
M Well, they're very difficult questions!
J OK, question four. Who was the director of the films *Jaws*, *E.T.* and *Jurassic Park*? Was it James Cameron, Martin Scorsese or Steven Spielberg?
M I think it was Steven Spielberg.
J Yes, you've got one right! Well done! OK, question five. When did the first man walk on the moon? Was it nineteen forty-nine, nineteen sixty-nine or nineteen eighty-nine?
M Was it nineteen sixty-nine?
J Yes, that's correct. But then, you probably watched it live on TV, didn't you?
M Hey, I'm not that old!
J Hmm. Right, question six. How much does the President of the USA earn a year? Is it four hundred thousand dollars, seven hundred thousand dollars, or a million dollars?
M I don't know, but I think it's seven hundred thousand dollars.
J No, it's four hundred thousand dollars.
M Really? Oh, I got that wrong then.
J Yes, you did. Question seven. How many countries are there in Africa? Are there fourteen, thirty-four or fifty-four?
M Er … thirty-four?
J No, you're wrong again! It's fifty-four! And the last question. Why is the English town of Stratford-upon-Avon famous? Is it because …
M That's easy. It's because William Shakespeare was born in Stratford.
J Correct.
M So, how many did I get right?
J Er, let's see …

CD3 54

do a computer course → I'm going to /tə/ do a computer course.
leave his job → He's going to /tə/ leave his job.
travel around the UK → We're going to /tə/ travel around the UK.
start university this year → I'm not going to /tə/ start university this year.
stay here for very long → She isn't going to /tə/ stay here for very long.
live in São Paulo → They aren't going to /tə/ live in São Paulo.

CD3 56

JASON Hello, Andy.
ANDY Hi, Jason. Hi, Rosie.
ROSIE Hi.
J Busy day?
A Yes, Mondays are always busy. You?
J Yes, we had a lot of new customers today. And it's going to be difficult without Rosie.
A What do you mean?
J Don't you know? Rosie's going to move to South Africa next month.
A South Africa?! Really?
R Yes, this is my last week at the bank.
A Wow! I didn't know that. Why South Africa?
R My husband, Freddie, is going to work for a travel company in Cape Town.
A OK. And what about you? What are you going to do?
R I don't know. I'm going to look for a job when I arrive.
J Are you going to sell your flat?
R No, we're not. My two brothers are going to live there.
A That's a good idea. Are you going to have a party before you leave?
R No, but Freddie and I are going to have dinner with some friends in a restaurant next Friday. You know, to say goodbye. Er, would you like to come, Andy?
A Oh, yes, please. Um, thanks very much.
R Great. Oh, and Jason's going to be there, of course.
A Oh really? Er, maybe I'm busy on Friday.
J Ha ha, very funny!
A Anyway, I'm going to go to the cinema this evening. Do you want to come?
J Maybe. What are you going to see?
A Well, it's called *Frank's Happiness*, and it's about a man who …

CD3 57

What are you going to do next weekend?
What are you going to do after class?
When are you going to do your homework?
What time are you going to get up tomorrow?
Where are you going to have dinner tomorrow evening?
Where are you going to go on holiday next year?

VIDEO 10 CD3 59

ANSWERS 2 journey 3 London 4 two 5 ten 6 this evening 7 day 8 driving test 9 course 10 September 11 job

CD3 60

Have a good journey.
Thanks a lot.
Have a good holiday.
Have a good day.
Have a good weekend.
Have a good birthday.
Have a good time.
See you in September.
Yes, see you.
See you in two hours.
See you this evening.
See you on Monday.
See you soon.
See you later.
Good luck with your new job.
Thanks very much.
Good luck with your driving test.
Good luck with your exam.
Good luck with your new school.
Good luck with your English test.

CD3 61

A

ALAN What are you going to do after work?
JANE I'm going to have dinner with friends.
A Oh, nice. Have a good time.
J Thanks a lot. And good luck with your exam.
A Thanks very much. See you tomorrow.
J Yes, see you. Bye!

B

RYAN I'm going to go on holiday next week.
LILY Really? Where are you going?
R To Edinburgh, in Scotland.
L Well, have a good holiday.
R Thanks. Oh, and good luck with your new job.
L Thanks a lot.

CD3 65

Listening Test (see Teacher's Book)

Language Summary 1

VOCABULARY

1.1 Numbers 0–12 1A 7 p7

0	zero	3	three	6	six	9	nine	11	eleven
1	one	4	four	7	seven	10	ten	12	twelve
2	two	5	five	8	eight				

1.2 Countries 1B 1 p8



1	the USA	4	the UK	7	Italy	10	Russia
2	Mexico	5	Germany	8	Turkey	11	China
3	Brazil	6	Spain	9	Egypt	12	Australia

1.3 The alphabet 1C 1 p10

Aa Bb Cc Dd Ee Ff Gg Hh Ii Jj Kk
Ll Mm Nn Oo Pp Qq Rr Ss Tt Uu
Vv Ww Xx Yy Zz

TIP • **pink** letters = vowels, **blue** letters = consonants

1.4 Things in your bag (1) 1C 6 p10

1 a bag
2 an apple
3 a dictionary
4 a book
5 a notebook
6 a mobile
7 a pen
8 a pencil
9 an umbrella



TIPS • We can say *a mobile*, *a phone* or *a mobile phone*.
• UK: *a mobile (phone)* = US: *a cell (phone)*

1.5 *a* and *an* 1C 8 p11

- We use ***a*** with nouns that begin with a **consonant** sound: *a **b**ag, a **d**ictionary, a **p**en,* etc.
- We use ***an*** with nouns that begin with a **vowel** sound: *an **a**pple, an **u**mbrella,* etc.

1.6 People 1D 1 p12



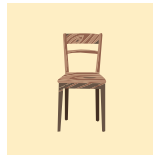
a baby a man a woman a boy a girl

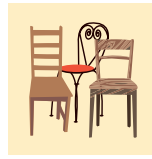
1.7 Things 1D 2 p12

1 a chair
2 a watch
3 a computer
4 a diary
5 a sandwich
6 a table
7 a camera



1.8 Plurals 1D 4 p12





SINGULAR	PLURAL
a chair a table a thing a boy	**+ -s** chair**s** table**s** thing**s** boy**s**
a watch a sandwich	**+ -es** watch**es** sandwich**es**
a diary a baby	**y → -ies** diar**ies** bab**ies**
a man a woman a person	**irregular** m**e**n w**o**men p**eo**ple

TIP • We also add *-es* to words ending in *-s*, *-ss*, *-sh*, *-x* and *-z*: *bus* → *bus**es***, *class* → *class**es***, etc.

GRAMMAR

1.1 *I, my, you, your* 1A 3 p6

I'm Stefan.
I'm fine, thanks.
My name's Emel.

How are **you**?
Nice to meet **you**.
What's **your** name?

TIPS • ***I*** / ***you*** + **verb** (*I* ***read***, *you* ***listen***, etc.)
• ***my*** / ***your*** + **noun** (*my* ***name***, *your* ***book***, etc.)
• *I'm = I am; name's = name is*

1.2 *he, his, she, her* 1B 7 p9

What's **his** name?
His name's Stefan.
Where's **he** from?
He's from Russia.

What's **her** name?
Her name's Emel.
Where's **she** from?
She's from Turkey.

TIPS • ***he*** / ***his*** = ♂ ***she*** / ***her*** = ♀
• ***he*** / ***she*** + **verb**, ***his*** / ***her*** + **noun**

REAL WORLD

1.1 Saying hello 1A 1 2 p6

Hello, I'm Stefan. What's your name?
Hello, my name's Emel.
Nice to meet you.
You too.
Hi, Anita.
Hi, Tim. How are you?
I'm fine, thanks. And you?
I'm OK, thanks.

1.2 Introducing people 1A 6 p6



1.3 Phone numbers 1A 8 p7



What's your mobile number?
It's 07954 544768.
What's your home number?
It's 020 7622 3479.

TIP • In phone numbers 0 = *oh* and 44 = *double four.*

1.4 Saying goodbye 1A 11 p7



1.5 *Where are you from?* 1B 5 p8



TIP • We can also say *I'm from* + city: *I'm from Moscow.*

1.6 First names and surnames 1C 3 p10



What's your first name, please?
It's Pablo.
What's your surname?
Ortega.
How do you spell that?
O-r-t-e-g-a.

1.7 Classroom language 1C 11 p11

Excuse me.
Can you repeat that, please?
What does (answer) mean?
I'm sorry, I don't know.
I'm sorry, I don't understand.
How do you spell (Brazil)?
What's this in English?

TIP • We can say *Can you repeat that, please?* or *Can you say that again, please?*

Look at Classroom Instructions p135.

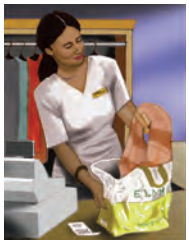
Language Summary 2

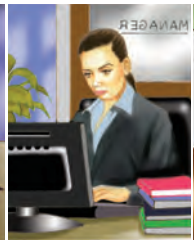
VOCABULARY

2.1 Nationalities 2A 1 p14

countries	nationalities
I'm from Italy.	I'm Italian.
Italy	Italian
Brazil	Brazilian
Russia	Russian
the USA	American
Germany	German
Egypt	Egyptian
Australia	Australian
Mexico	Mexican
Turkey	Turkish
the UK	British
Spain	Spanish
China	Chinese
Japan	Japanese
France	French
Colombia	Colombian

2.2 Jobs 2B 1 p16


a sales assistant



a manager



a teacher


a taxi driver


a doctor


a musician


a police officer


an actor
an actress


a waiter
a waitress

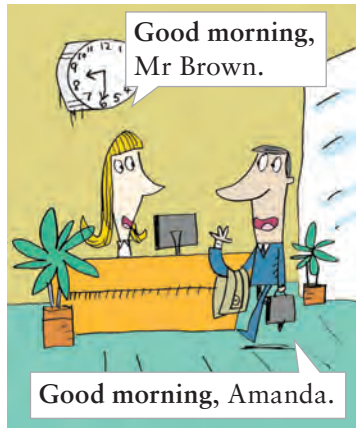
TIPS • In the Language Summaries we only show the main stress (•) in words and phrases.
• We use ***a*** or ***an*** with jobs: *He's a doctor.*

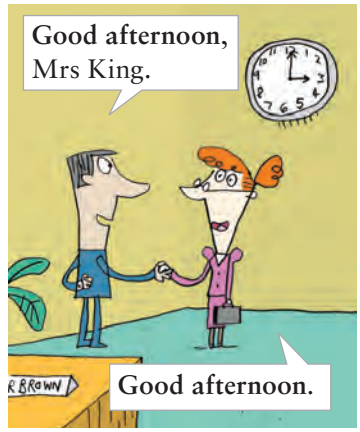
2.3 Titles 2C 1 p18

Mr	a man (married or single)
Mrs / Ms	a married woman
Ms / Miss	a single woman

TIP • *Mr*, *Mrs*, *Ms* or *Miss* + surname: *Mr Brown*, *Mrs King*, *Ms Roberts*, etc.

2.4 Greetings 2C 2 p18









TIPS • *Good morning*, *Good afternoon* and *Good evening* = *Hello*
• *Good night* = *Goodbye*

2.5 Numbers 13–100 2D 1 2 5 p20

13 thirteen	**21** twenty-one	**30** thirty
14 fourteen	**22** twenty-two	**40** forty
15 fifteen	**23** twenty-three	**50** fifty
16 sixteen	**24** twenty-four	**60** sixty
17 seventeen	**25** twenty-five	**70** seventy
18 eighteen	**26** twenty-six	**80** eighty
19 nineteen	**27** twenty-seven	**90** ninety
20 twenty	**28** twenty-eight	**100** a hundred
	29 twenty-nine	

GRAMMAR

2.1 *be* (singular): positive 2A 4 p14

POSITIVE (+)

I'm (= I am)	I'm British.
you're (= you are)	You're a student.
he's (= he is)	He's German.
she's (= she is)	She's Brazilian.
it's (= it is)	It's American.

TIP • We use ***it*** for a thing (*a car, a book*, etc.):
It*'s a German car.*
It*'s an English book.*

2.2 *be* (singular): negative 2A 7 p15

NEGATIVE (–)

I'm not (= am not)	I'm not American.
you aren't (= are not)	You aren't a teacher.
he isn't (= is not)	He isn't from Berlin.
she isn't (= is not)	She isn't Australian.
it isn't (= is not)	It isn't a Mercedes.

TIPS • We can also say *you****'re not***, *he****'s not***, *she****'s not*** and *it****'s not***:
*You****'re not*** *a teacher.*
*He****'s not*** *from Berlin.*
*She****'s not*** *Australian.*
*It****'s not*** *a Mercedes.*
• We can't say ~~*I amn't.*~~

2.3 *be* (singular): *Wh-* questions 2B 3 p16

WH- QUESTIONS (?)

Where am I?
Where are you from?
Where's he / she / it from?
What's your name?
What's his / her name?
What's your job?
What's his / her job?

TIPS • *Where* asks about a place (Turkey, London, etc.).
• *What* asks about a thing (a name, a job, etc.).
• *Where****'s*** *… ? = Where* ***is*** *… ?*
• *What****'s*** *… ? = What* ***is*** *… ?*
• We can't write ~~*Where****'m*** *I?*~~ or ~~*Where****'re*** *you from?*~~.
• We also make questions with *How*: *How are you?*

2.4 *be* (singular): *yes / no* questions and short answers 2B 6 p17

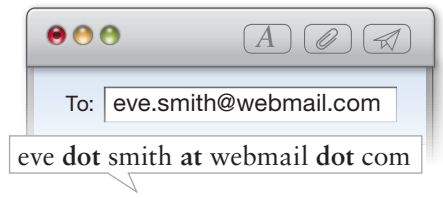
YES / NO QUESTIONS (?)	SHORT ANSWERS
Am I in this class?	Yes, you are. No, you aren't.
Are you from Russia?	Yes, I am. No, I'm not.
Is he a doctor?	Yes, he is. No, he isn't.
Is she Italian?	Yes, she is. No, she isn't.
Is it Japanese?	Yes, it is. No, it isn't.

TIPS • We can also say: *No, you****'re not****. No, he****'s not****. No, she****'s not****.* and *No, it****'s not****.*
• We can't say ~~*Yes, you're.*~~, ~~*Yes, I'm.*~~, ~~*Yes, he's.*~~, ~~*Yes, she's.*~~ or ~~*Yes, it's.*~~

REAL WORLD

2.1 Email addresses 2C 3 p18

.	dot
@	at
-	hyphen
_	underscore



2.2 Personal information questions 2C 6 p19

What's your first name?
What's your surname?
What's your nationality?
What's your address?
What's your mobile number?
What's your email address?

2.3 *How old … ?* 2D 8 p20

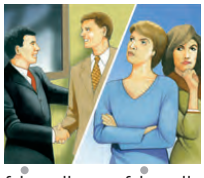
How old is your house?
It's a hundred years old.
How old are you?
I'm thirty.

TIPS • We don't usually say *years old* for people: *I'm thirty.*, *Emily's nine.*, etc.
• We say *I'm thirty.* not ~~*I* ***have*** *thirty*~~. or ~~*I'm thirty* ***years***~~.

Language Summary 3

VOCABULARY

3.1 Adjectives (1) 3A 1 p22


friendly unfriendly


beautiful ugly


big small



good bad


hot cold



expensive cheap


new old


nice

3.2 Word order with adjectives; *very* 3A 2 p22

- **Adjectives** go after ***be***:
  *Your watch **is** **nice**.*
- **Adjectives** go before **nouns**:
  *It's a **new** **car**.*
- **Adjectives** are not plural with **plural nouns**:
  *They're **good** **friends**.*
  not ~~*They're good**s** friends*~~.
- We put ***very*** before **adjectives**:
  *It's **very** **hot**.*



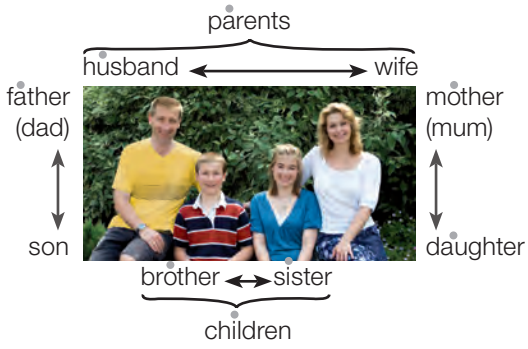
It's hot.

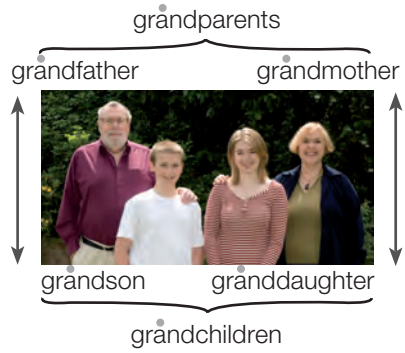


It's very hot.

TIP • Notice the word order in questions: ***Are** you **cold**?*, ***Is** the camera **expensive**?*, ***Is** he **friendly**?*, etc.

3.3 Family 3B 2 p24 7 p25





TIPS • The plural of *wife* is *wives* not ~~*wifes*~~.
• The singular of *children* is *a child*.

TIP • The singular of *grandchildren* is *a grandchild*.

3.4 Food and drink (1) 3C 6 p26


a coffee


a cappuccino


an espresso


a tea


a mineral water


an orange juice


a croissant


an egg sandwich


a cheese and tomato sandwich


a tuna salad

TIP • We can say *a white coffee* (with milk) and *a black coffee* (no milk).

3.5 Food and drink (2) 3D 1 p28

1 fruit
2 tea
3 coffee
4 vegetables
5 orange juice
6 milk
7 bread
8 water
9 fish
10 rice
11 meat
12 cheese
13 eggs
14 sugar
15 pasta
16 chocolate



3.6 *love, like, eat, drink, a lot of* 3D 3 p28


I **love** chocolate.


I **like** fish.


I **eat a lot of** rice.


I **drink a lot of** coffee.

GRAMMAR

3.1 *be* (plural): positive and negative 3A 6 p23

POSITIVE (+)

we**'re** (= we **are**)	We**'re** in a small hotel.
you**'re** (= you **are**)	You**'re** from the UK.
they**'re** (= they **are**)	They**'re** very big.

NEGATIVE (–)

we **aren't** (= **are not**)	We **aren't** in the hotel now.
you **aren't**	You **aren't** from Turkey.
they **aren't**	They **aren't** very expensive.

TIPS • With plural nouns we write *people are* not ~~*people're*~~, *rooms are* not ~~*rooms're*~~, etc.

• *You* is singular and plural: *You're* ***a*** *student. You're student****s***.

• We can also say *we****'re not***, *you****'re not*** and *they****'re not***.

3.2 *be* (plural): questions and short answers 3A 11 p23

***WH-* QUESTIONS (?)**

Where	**are**	we?
Where	**are**	you?
Where	**are**	they?
Where	**are**	Liz and Steve?

***YES / NO* QUESTIONS (?)**	**SHORT ANSWERS**
Are we in room 216?	Yes, you **are**. No, you **aren't**.
Are you in London?	Yes, we **are**. No, we **aren't**.
Are they in a big hotel?	Yes, they **are**. No, they **aren't**.

TIP • We can also say: *No, we****'re not***. *No, you****'re not***. and *No, they****'re not***.

3.3 Possessive *'s* 3B 4 p24

- We use a name (*Nick*, etc.) or a noun for a person (*sister*, etc.) + ***'s*** for the possessive.
  *Fiona is Nick****'s*** *wife. It's my sister****'s*** *car.*

TIPS • ***'s*** can mean ***is*** or the **possessive**: *Anne****'s*** *my sister.* (*'s = is*); *Kevin is Nick****'s*** *son.* (*'s* = possessive)

• We can also use *'s* with other nouns for people: *It's my* ***teacher's*** *car. It's his* ***friend's*** *camera.*, etc.

• For plural nouns, we write ***s'***: *It's my parent****s'*** *house. He's my friend****s'*** *son.*

3.4 Subject pronouns (*I*, *you*, etc.) and possessive adjectives (*my*, *your*, etc.) 3B 9 p25

subject pronouns	**I**	**you**	**he**	**she**	**it**	**we**	**they**
possessive adjectives	**my**	**your**	**his**	**her**	**its**	**our**	**their**

- We use **subject pronouns** with verbs: ***I'm***, ***you*** *listen*, ***they*** *read*, etc.
- We use **possessive adjectives** with nouns: ***my*** *sister*, ***your*** *family*, ***their*** *cat*, etc.
  I'm Mary and this is Sid, **my** husband.
  Her husband's name is Nick and **he**'s a doctor.
  These are **their** two children – **our** grandchildren.
  It's a very nice photo, I think.

REAL WORLD

3.1 Money and prices 3C 1 p26



ten pounds | ten p (p = pence) | ten (pounds) fifty | ten euros | ten dollars | ten cents

3.2 *How much … ?* 3C 4 p26

SINGULAR

How much is this watch? — It's £25.

How much is it? — $64.

PLURAL

How much are the pens? — They're 70p.

How much are they? — €95.

3.3 In a café 3C 9 p27

ASSISTANT	**CUSTOMER**
Can I help you?	
	Yes, (two cappuccinos), please.
Sure. Anything else?	
	Yes, (a croissant and an egg sandwich), please. No, that's all, thanks.
Eat in or take away?	
	Eat in, please. Take away, please.
OK, that's (£8.60), please.	
	Thank you very much. Thanks a lot.
You're welcome.	

Language Summary 4

VOCABULARY

4.1 Phrases with *like*, *have*, *live*, *work*, *study* 4A 1 p30



TIP • a flat (UK) = an apartment (US)

4.2 Free time activities 4B 1 p32



TIPS • We can say *I (watch TV)* ***a lot***., etc.
• *video games = computer games*

4.3 Things to buy 4C 1 p34



TIP • The plural of *box* is *boxes*. The singular of *batteries* is *a battery*.

4.4 *this, that, these, those* 4C 2 p34

	here	there
singular	this	that
plural	these	those

How much is **this** map?
How much are **these** birthday cards?
How much is **that** big box of chocolates?
How much are **those** batteries?

TIP • *This*, *that*, *these*, *those* go before the noun: *How much is* ***this map****?*, ***These bags*** *are beautiful.*

4.5 Days of the week 4D 1 p36

Monday **Tuesday**
Wednesday **Thursday** **Friday**
Saturday **Sunday**

TIP • Saturday and Sunday = *the weekend*

4.6 Time words 4D 2 p36

60 **seconds** = 1 **minute**
60 minutes = 1 **hour**
24 hours = 1 **day**
7 days = 1 **week**
365 days = 1 **year**
12 **months** = 1 year

TIPS • 30 minutes = half an hour
• 15 minutes = quarter of an hour
• 18 months = a year and a half
• We say *two and a half years* not ~~*two years and a half*~~.

GRAMMAR

4.1 Present Simple (*I*, *you*, *we*, *they*): positive and negative 4A 3 p31

POSITIVE (+)

I **work** for a mobile phone company.
You **study** English.
We **live** in a very nice flat.
They **like** rock music.

TIP • The Present Simple positive is the same for *I*, *you*, *we* and *they*.

NEGATIVE (–)

I	**don't**	**have**	a new phone.	(**don't** = do not)
You	**don't**	**study**	Russian.	
We	**don't**	**live**	in Mexico City.	
They	**don't**	**like**	Chinese food.	

TIP • The Present Simple negative is the same for *I*, *you*, *we* and *they*.

4.2 Present Simple (*I*, *you*, *we*, *they*): questions and short answers 4B 5 p32

***WH-* QUESTIONS (?)**

Where	**do**	you	**live**	in the UK?
What music	**do**	you	**like**?	
What	**do**	you	**do**	in your free time?
What food	**do**	you	**like**?	

TIP • We can say *What do you do?* to ask about a person's job:
A *What do you do?*
B *I'm a doctor.*

***YES / NO* QUESTIONS (?)**	**SHORT ANSWERS**
Do I **know** you?	Yes, you **do**. No, you **don't**.
Do you **like** London?	Yes, I **do**. No, I **don't**.
Do we **have** a class today?	Yes, we/you **do**. No, we/you **don't**.
Do you **go** to concerts?	Yes, we **do**. No, we **don't**.
Do they **like** Chinese food?	Yes, they **do**. No, they **don't**.

TIPS • Present Simple questions are the same for *I*, *you*, *we* and *they*.
• We don't use *like*, *have*, etc. in short answers:
A *Do you like London?*
B *Yes, I do.* not ~~*Yes, I* ***like***~~. or ~~*Yes, I* ***do*** *like*~~.

REAL WORLD

4.1 In a shop 4C 6 p35

CUSTOMER	ASSISTANT
Excuse me. Do you have any (maps of London)?	Yes, they're over there.
How much is (this map)?	It's (£5.75).
How much are (these birthday cards)?	They're (£1.79) each.
Can I have (that box of chocolates) and (these cards), please?	Sure. Anything else?
Yes, (these sweets), please. No, that's all, thanks.	OK, that's (£12.33).
Here you are.	Thanks a lot. Thanks very much.

4.2 Telling the time 4D 3 4 p36


six o'clock / six


five past six


ten past six


quarter past six / six fifteen


twenty past six


twenty-five past six


half past six / six thirty


twenty-five to seven


twenty to seven


quarter to seven / six forty-five


ten to seven


five to seven

TIPS • We can say *quarter past / to …* or ***a*** *quarter past / to …* .
• We can also say the time like this: *six twenty*, *six fifty-five*, etc.

4.3 Talking about the time 4D 7 p36

What time is it, please? — It's twenty to three.

What time is your English class? — It's at half past eight.

TIPS • We can say *What time is it?* or *What's the time?*.
• We use ***at*** for times: *My class is at four o'clock.*
• a.m. = 0.00–12.00; p.m. = 12.00–24.00

Language Summary 5

VOCABULARY

5.1 Daily routines 5A 1 p38


get up


have breakfast


leave home



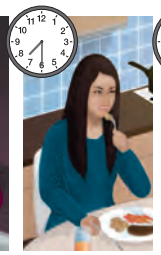
start work


have lunch



finish work


get home


have dinner


go to bed


sleep

5.2 Time phrases with *on*, *in*, *at* 5B 1 p40

on	in	at
Sunday	the morning	six o'clock
Monday	the afternoon	half past ten
Tuesday morning	the evening	midday
Friday afternoon	the week	midnight
Saturday evening		night
		the weekend

TIPS • We say *in the morning / afternoon / evening*, but *at night* not ~~*in the night*~~.
• *midday* = 12.00, *midnight* = 24.00

5.3 Food and drink (3) 5C 1 p42

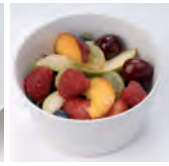

chicken salad


vegetable lasagne


burger and chips

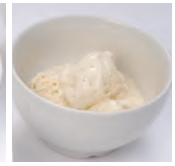

mushroom pizza


apple pie and cream


fruit salad


chocolate ice cream


strawberry ice cream

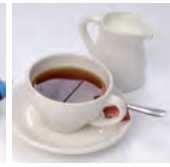

vanilla ice cream


a bottle of still mineral water


a bottle of sparkling mineral water


an orange juice


a coffee


a tea

5.4 Frequency adverbs and phrases with *every* 5D 1 4 p44

FREQUENCY ADVERBS



PHRASES WITH *EVERY*

- We can use ***every*** + **time word**: *every day*, *every week*, *every month*, *every year*, etc.

TIPS • We say *every day* not ~~*every days*~~, *every week* not ~~*every weeks*~~, etc.
• We can also say *every morning*, *every afternoon*, *every evening*, *every night*, *every Sunday*, *every Friday evening*, *every six weeks*, *every four years*, etc.

WORD ORDER

- **Frequency adverbs** go after ***be***: *I **'m always** tired on Sundays.*
  *It **'s not usually** very busy.*
- **Frequency adverbs** go before other **verbs**: *I **never have** breakfast.*
  *I **usually watch** sport on TV.*
- **Phrases with *every*** are usually at the end of the sentence:
  *I work in a hotel **every Saturday**.*
  *I play football **every Sunday morning**.*

TIP • We can say: *I'm always tired on* ***Sunday / Sundays***.

GRAMMAR

5.1 Present Simple (*he*, *she*, *it*): positive and negative 5A 4 p39

POSITIVE (+)

- In positive sentences with *he*, *she* and *it* we add **-s** or **-es** to the verb: *She leave**s** home at 8.15. He watch**es** TV in the evening. It finish**es** at midnight.*

spelling rule	examples
most verbs: add **-s**	like**s** leave**s** work**s** get**s** sleep**s**
verbs ending in *-ch* or *-sh*: add **-es**	watch**es** teach**es** finish**es**
verbs ending in consonant + *y*: *y* → **-ies**	studi**es**
the verbs *go* and *do*: add **-es**	go**es** do**es**
the verb *have* is irregular	**has**

NEGATIVE (–)

He	**doesn't**	**have**	a car.	(**doesn't** = does not)
She	**doesn't**	**like**	mornings.	
She	**doesn't**	**watch**	TV after dinner.	
It	**doesn't**	**start**	today.	

TIP • The Present Simple negative is the same for *he*, *she* and *it*: ***He** doesn't have a car. **It** doesn't start today.*

5.2 Present Simple (*he*, *she*, *it*): questions and short answers 5B 4 p41

***WH-* QUESTIONS (?)**

Where	**does**	Nadine	**work**	at the weekend?
What	**does**	she	**do**	in the week?
Where	**does**	she	**live**	in Manchester?
What	**does**	she	**do**	in her free time?
When	**does**	he	**get up**	on Sunday?
When	**does**	it	**start**?	

TIPS • Present Simple questions are the same for *he*, *she* and *it*.
• We say *Where does Nadine work at the weekend?* not ~~*Where does Nadine work**s** at the weekend?*~~.

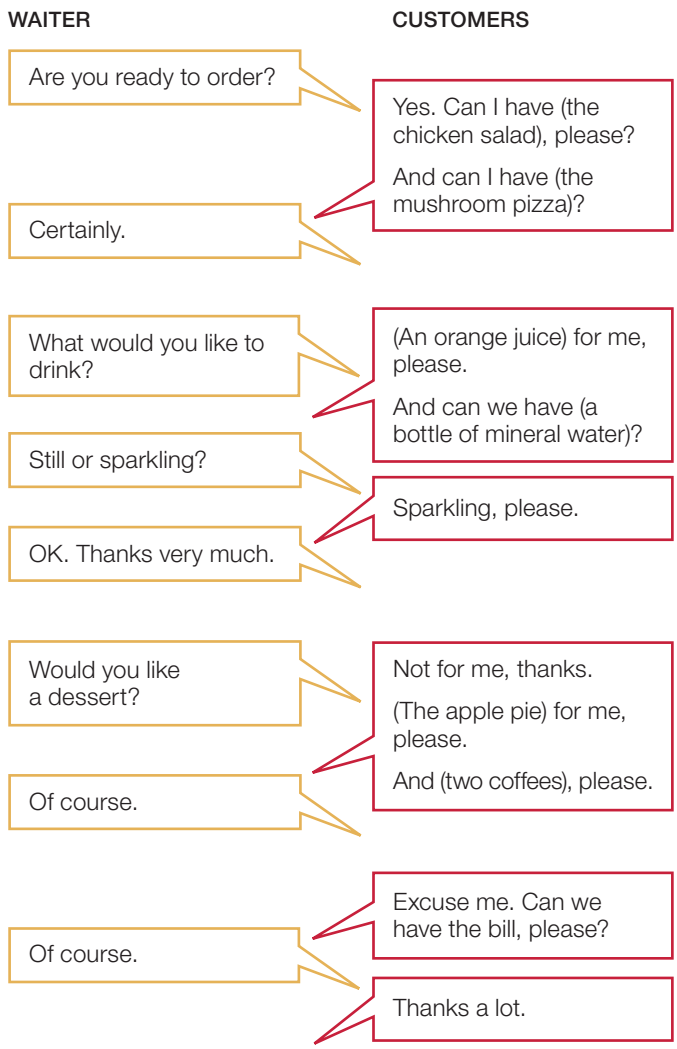
YES / NO QUESTIONS (?)	SHORT ANSWERS
Does he **know** Nadine?	Yes, he **does**. No, he **doesn't**.
Does she **like** Manchester?	Yes, she **does**. No, she **doesn't**.
Does it **start** at 7.30?	Yes, it **does**. No, it **doesn't**.

- We use ***does*** in questions with *he*, *she* and *it*.
- We use ***do*** in questions with *I*, *you*, *we* and *they*.

TIP • We don't use *know*, etc. in short answers: **A** *Does he know her?* **B** *Yes, he does.* not ~~*Yes, he knows*~~. or ~~*Yes, he does know*~~.

REAL WORLD

5.1 In a restaurant 5C 4 p43



TIP • We can use *the* or *a* when we order food:
*Can I have **the** / **a** chicken salad, please?*
*And can I have **the** / **a** mushroom pizza?*

Language Summary 6

VOCABULARY

6.1 Places in a town or city (1)
6A 1 p46


a park


a station



a theatre


a building


a river


an airport


a bus station


a museum


a shopping centre

TIP • *a station = a train station*

6.2 Places in a town or city (2)
6B 1 p48


a bank


a chemist's


a road


a cashpoint / an ATM


a bus stop


a supermarket


a square


a market


a post office

6.3 Things in your bag (2)
6C 1 p50

1 a map
2 a purse
3 a camera
4 keys
5 a laptop
6 a passport
7 a guide book
8 a wallet
9 an ID card
10 a credit card
11 money



6.4 Clothes
6D 1 p52



1 a shirt
2 a tie
3 a suit
4 trousers
5 a jumper
6 a skirt
7 boots
8 a jacket
9 a T-shirt
10 jeans
11 trainers
12 a dress
13 a coat
14 shoes

TIPS • We can say ***a pair of*** *trousers / jeans / shoes / trainers / boots.*
• *Clothes* is a plural word: *Your clothes* ***are*** *over there.*

6.5 Colours
6D 2 p52



TIP • We use ***What colour is / are … ?*** to ask about colours:
What colour is *Wayne's tie?* ***What colour are*** *Monica's boots?*

6.6 *favourite* 6D 6 p52



- *favourite* = the thing or person we like best

My **favourite** colour is pink.
This is my **favourite** jacket.
These are my **favourite** boots.
What's your **favourite** colour?
Who's your **favourite** actor?

TIP • We use *Who* to ask about a person:
A ***Who**'s your favourite actor?*
B *Leonardo DiCaprio.*

GRAMMAR

6.1 *a, some, a lot of*; *there is / there are*: positive 6A 4 p47

A, SOME, A LOT OF



There's **a person** in the park.



There are **some people** in the park.



There are **a lot of people** in the park.

- We use ***a*** or ***an*** with singular nouns: ***a** person*, ***an** airport*, etc.
- We use ***some*** and ***a lot of*** with plural nouns: ***some** museums*, ***a lot of** restaurants*, etc.

TIP • We can say *a lot of* or *lots of*: *There are **lots of** people in the park.*

THERE IS / THERE ARE

POSITIVE (+)

SINGULAR	**There's** a big new shopping centre. **There's** an airport in Bristol.
PLURAL	**There are** five theatres. **There are** some very nice parks. **There are** a lot of old buildings.

TIPS • *there's = there is*
• We write *there are* not ~~*there're*~~.

6.2 *there is / there are*: negative, *yes / no* questions and short answers; *any* 6B 3 p49

NEGATIVE (–)

There isn't a station near here.
There aren't any good restaurants near here.

YES / NO QUESTIONS (?)	SHORT ANSWERS
Is there a bank?	Yes, **there is**. No, **there isn't**.
Are there any shops?	Yes, **there are**. No, **there aren't**.

TIP • We say *Yes, there is*. not ~~*Yes, there's*~~.

ANY

- We use ***any*** in **negatives** and **questions** with *there are*: *There aren't **any** good restaurants near here.*
  *Are there **any** shops?*

TIP • We use ***some*** in **positive** sentences with *there are*: *There are **some** very nice restaurants in the centre.*

REAL WORLD

6.1 At a tourist information centre 6C 4 p51

ASSISTANT

Hello. Can I help you?

Yes, of course. Here you are.

It's open from (11.30) a.m. to (5) p.m.

No, it's closed on Mondays.

It's in (Trumpington Street).

Yes, of course. Here it is. It's about (five) minutes away.

Yes, they start at (11 a.m. and 1 p.m.) every day.

They're (£17.50) per person.

TOURIST

Yes, please. Do you have a (map of Cambridge city centre)?

When is (Kettle's Yard art gallery) open?

Is it open every day?

Where's the (Fitzwilliam Museum)?

Can you show me on this map?

Can we book a walking tour here?

How much are they?

Language Summary 7

VOCABULARY

7.1 Things you like and don't like
7A 1 p54


animals


classical music


visiting new places


horror films


watching sport on TV


shopping for clothes


soap operas


dancing


flying

TIP • UK: *a film* = US: *a movie*

7.2 *love, like, don't like, hate*
7A 3 p54


I love … I like … I don't like … I hate …

- After *love*, *like*, *don't like* and *hate* we can use a **noun** or **verb+*ing***.
  I love **animals**. I don't like **dancing**.
  I like **soap operas**. I hate **shopping** for clothes.

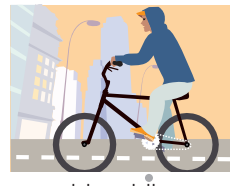
SPELLING OF VERB+*ING* FORMS

- Most verbs: *visit* → *visit**ing***, *watch* → *watch**ing***, *fly* → *fly**ing***, etc.
- Verbs ending in *-e*: *dance* → *danc**ing*** (not ~~*dance**ing***~~), etc.
- Verbs ending in consonant + vowel + consonant: *shop* → *shop**ping*** (not ~~*shop**ing***~~), etc.
- Verbs ending in *-y*: *play* → *play**ing*** (not ~~*play**ying***~~), etc.

TIP • We don't use *the* when we talk about things we like or don't like in general: *I love animals*. (= all animals), *I don't like sport*. (= all sport).

7.3 Abilities
7B 1 p56


ski


ride a bike


drive

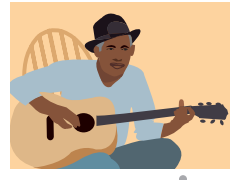

swim



speak German


play the piano


sing


play the guitar

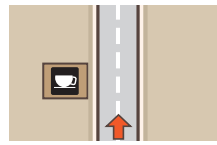


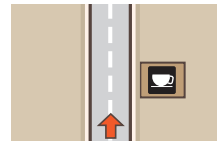
play basketball


cook

TIPS • We say *play basketball / football / tennis* but *play **the** piano / **the** guitar*.
• *a bike = a bicycle*

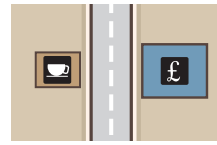
7.4 Prepositions of place
7C 2 p58


The café is **on** the left.


The café is **on** the right.



The café is **in** King Street.


The café is **opposite** the bank.


The café is **next to** the bank.


The café is **near** the bank.

TIP • We can say ***in** King Street* or ***on** King Street*.

7.5 Things people do online 7D 1 p60

send emails
get / **receive** emails

buy things online
sell things online

read a blog
write a blog

watch TV programmes
watch videos

be on Facebook
be on Twitter

download videos
download music
download apps

book hotels
book holidays
book flights

listen to the radio
listen to music

chat to friends and family

search for information

TIPS • *online* = connected to the internet: *Do you chat to friends online?*
• *a TV programme* (UK) = *a TV show* (US)

GRAMMAR

7.1 Object pronouns 7A 8 p55

- Look at these sentences. Notice the word order.
  Subject pronouns go **before** the verb.
  Object pronouns go **after** the verb.

subject	verb	object
I	love	soap operas.
Adam	hates	them.

subject pronouns	I	you	he	she	it	we	they
object pronouns	me	you	him	her	it	us	them

7.2 *can*: positive and negative 7B 3 p56

- We use ***can*** or ***can't*** to talk about ability.
- *Can* and *can't* are the same for *I*, *you*, *he*, *she*, *it*, *we* and *they*.

POSITIVE (+)

She	can	play	the piano.
They	can	ski.	

NEGATIVE (–)

I	can't	swim.	
We	can't	speak	Chinese.

TIPS • We sometimes use (***very***) ***well*** with *can*: *She can swim **well**. They can ski **very well**.*
• We say *She can play the piano.* not ~~*She can **to** play the piano*~~.

7.3 *can*: *yes* / *no* questions and short answers 7B 8 p57

YES / *NO* QUESTIONS (?)	SHORT ANSWERS
Can you cook?	Yes, I can. No, I can't.
Can he play the guitar?	Yes, he can. No, he can't.
Can she speak French?	Yes, she can. No, she can't.
Can they swim?	Yes, they can. No, they can't.

TIP • We don't use *do* or *does* in questions with *can*: ***Can you** cook?* not ~~***Do you can** cook?~~.

REAL WORLD

7.1 Asking for and giving directions 7C 6 p59

ASKING FOR DIRECTIONS

Excuse me. Where's the (museum)?

Excuse me. Is there a (bank) near here?

GIVING DIRECTIONS

Go along this road and turn left.

Go along this road and turn right.

That's (Park Street).

The (museum) is on the right, next to the (theatre).

The (bank) is on the left, opposite the (station).

It's over there, near the (cinema).

TIP • We can say *on **the** right / left* or *on **your** right / left*.

Language Summary 8

VOCABULARY

8.1 Adjectives (2) 8A 1 p62



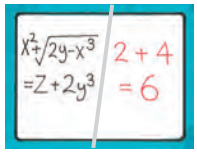
short long



terrible great
awful fantastic
amazing



right wrong



difficult easy



interesting boring



happy unhappy



old young



full empty

8.2 Years and past time phrases 8B 1 2 p64

YEARS

1887 = eighteen eighty-seven
1900 = nineteen hundred
1980 = nineteen eighty
2000 = two thousand
2009 = two thousand and nine
2010 = twenty ten

TIPS • For the years 2000–2009, we usually say *two thousand*, *two thousand and one*, etc.
• For the years 2010–2099, we usually say *twenty ten*, *twenty eleven*, etc.
• We use ***in*** with years: ***in*** *1980*, ***in*** *2009*, etc.

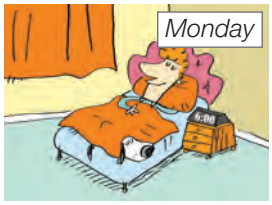
PAST TIME PHRASES



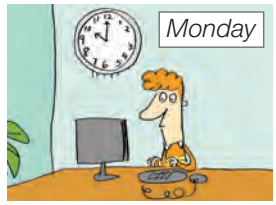
Joe was in Paris **last** week.



He was at home **yesterday** afternoon.



He was in bed four hours **ago**.



He's at work **now**.

TIPS • We use ***last*** with days (*last Monday*) and months (*last June*).
• We also say *last night*, *last week*, *last weekend*, *last month*, *last year*.
• We say *yesterday morning*, *yesterday afternoon* and *yesterday evening*, but *last night* not ~~*yesterday night*~~.
• *four hours* ***ago*** = four hours before now

8.3 Months and dates 8C 1 2 p66

MONTHS

January	May	September
February	June	October
March	July	November
April	August	December

TIPS • We use capital letters with months.
• We use ***in*** with months: ***in*** *January*, etc.

DATES

1st	first	16th	sixteenth
2nd	second	17th	seventeenth
3rd	third	18th	eighteenth
4th	fourth	19th	nineteenth
5th	fifth	20th	twentieth
6th	sixth	21st	twenty-first
7th	seventh	22nd	twenty-second
8th	eighth	23rd	twenty-third
9th	ninth	24th	twenty-fourth
10th	tenth	25th	twenty-fifth
11th	eleventh	26th	twenty-sixth
12th	twelfth	27th	twenty-seventh
13th	thirteenth	28th	twenty-eighth
14th	fourteenth	29th	twenty-ninth
15th	fifteenth	30th	thirtieth
		31st	thirty-first

8.4 Big numbers 8D 1 p68

150 = a hundred and fifty
390 = three hundred and ninety
1,000 = a thousand
16,200 = sixteen thousand, two hundred
750,000 = seven hundred and fifty thousand
1,000,000 = a million
50,000,000 = fifty million

TIPS • We don't use a plural *-s* with *hundred*, *thousand* or *million*: *three hundred* not ~~*three hundreds*~~, etc.
• We use *and* after *hundred*, but not after *thousand*: *a hundred* ***and*** *fifty*, but *sixteen thousand, two hundred*.
• We can say ***a*** *hundred* or ***one*** *hundred*, ***a*** *thousand* or ***one*** *thousand* and ***a*** *million* or ***one*** *million*.

GRAMMAR

8.1 Past Simple of *be*: positive and negative 8A 3 p63

POSITIVE (+)	NEGATIVE (–)
I **was**	I **wasn't** (= was not)
you **were**	you **weren't** (= were not)
he / she / it **was**	he / she / it **wasn't**
we **were**	we **weren't**
they **were**	they **weren't**

I **was** at the World Cup Final.
We **were** near the Opera House.
The stadium **wasn't** full.
They **weren't** very happy.

TIP • The past of *there is / there are* is *there was / there were*:
***There was** a big party. **There were** some amazing fireworks.*

8.2 Past Simple of *be*: questions and short answers; *was born / were born* 8B 5 p65

***WH-* QUESTIONS (?)**

Where	**was**	I / he / she / it last week?
When	**were**	you / we / they in India?

Where	**was**	the wedding?
How old	**were**	Sunil and Pria?
How many people	**were**	at the wedding?
Where	**was**	Sunil's sister?

YES / NO QUESTIONS (?)	SHORT ANSWERS
Was I / he / she / it at the wedding?	Yes, I / he / she / it **was**. No, I / he / she / it **wasn't**.
Were you / we / they at the wedding?	Yes, you / we / they **were**. No, you / we / they **weren't**.

TIP • We can also make questions with *Was there … ?* and *Were there … ?*: ***Was there** a party?*
***Were there** a lot of people at the wedding?*

WAS BORN / WERE BORN

Where was Pria born?

(She was born) in London.

When were you born?

(I was born) in 1991.

TIP • We say *I was born in 1991.* not ~~*I borned in 1991*~~.

REAL WORLD

8.1 Talking about days and dates 8C 3 p66

What day is it today?

(It's) Monday.

What's the date today?

(It's) March the seventh.

When's your birthday?

(It's on) June the second.

TIPS • We can say *March **the** seventh* or ***the** seventh of March*.
• We write *March 7th* or *7th March*.
• In the UK, **5/6/15** = 5th June 2015 (day / month / year).
In the USA, **5/6/15** = 6th May 2015 (month / day / year).

8.2 Making suggestions 8C 8 p67

What shall we do (this evening)?

Let's (go to a club).
Why don't we (go to the cinema)?

✓ Yes, that's a good idea.
✓✗ Maybe.
✗ No, I don't think so.

Where shall we meet?

Let's meet at (the cinema).

What time shall we meet?

About (seven thirty).

TIPS • We use *Let's … , Why don't we …. ?* and *Shall we … ?* to make suggestions.
• We use *What / Where / What time shall we … ?* to ask for suggestions.
• *Let's … , Why don't we … ?* and *Shall we … ?* are followed by a verb: *Let's **go** to the cinema.* etc.

Language Summary 9

VOCABULARY

9.1 Transport 9A 1 p70


a car


a bus


a train


a taxi


a bike


a motorbike


a plane


a boat

TIPS • We can say *a taxi* or *a cab*.

• We say *I go / come / travel* ***by*** *car*, ***by*** *bus*, etc.: *I usually go to work* ***by*** *car*.

• We also say: *I* ***walk*** *to work / school*, etc.

• *go by plane = fly*, *go by car = drive*, *go by bike = cycle*

9.2 Holiday activities 9B 1 p72

Match phrases 1–11 to pictures a–k.

1 [e] go on holiday
2 [ ] take photos
3 [ ] go to the beach
4 [ ] stay with friends or family
5 [ ] stay in a hotel
6 [ ] go sightseeing
7 [ ] go swimming
8 [ ] go for a walk
9 [ ] rent a car
10 [ ] travel around
11 [ ] have a good time

TIP • *go on holiday* (UK) = *go on vacation* (US)


a


b


c


d


e


f


g


h


i


j


k

9.3 At the station 9C 1 p74


a customer a ticket office


a ticket machine


a platform


a single


a return

TIP • *a single* = a single ticket, *a return* = a return ticket

9.4 Question words 9D 4 p77

QUESTION WORD	ASKS ABOUT ...	EXAMPLE
Who	a person	**Who**'s she?
What	a thing	**What**'s that?
When	a time	**When** do you start work?
Where	a place	**Where** does he live?
Why	a reason	**Why** are you tired?
How old	age	**How old** are they?
How many	a number	**How many** people are there?
How much	an amount of money	**How much** are those shoes?

TIPS • We also use ***What time … ?*** to ask about a time:
A *What time do you go to bed?* B *At half past eleven.*

• We usually answer *Why … ?* questions with ***Because …*** :
A *Why are you tired?* B *Because I got up at 5 a.m.*

GRAMMAR

9.1 Past Simple: positive 9A 5 p71

REGULAR VERBS

- To make the Past Simple of regular verbs, we usually add ***-ed*** to the verb: *want**ed***, *start**ed***, *visit**ed***, etc.
- For regular verbs ending in *-e* (*like*, *arrive*, etc.), we add ***-d*** to the verb: *like**d***, *arrive**d***, etc.

TIPS • The Past Simple of *travel* is *travel**led***.
• The Past Simple of *study* is *stud**ied***.

REGULAR VERBS IN UNITS 1–10

arrive ask book chat check cook download finish hate help like listen live look love move play practise receive rent repeat search show start stay turn use visit walk want watch work

IRREGULAR VERBS

- Many verbs in English are irregular. There are no spelling rules for irregular verbs.

IRREGULAR VERBS IN UNITS 1–10

verb	Past Simple	verb	Past Simple
buy	bought	put	put
choose	chose	read /riːd/	read /red/
come	came	ride	rode
do	did	say	said /sed/
drink	drank	see	saw /sɔː/
drive	drove	sell	sold
eat	ate	send	sent
feel	felt	sing	sang
find	found	sleep	slept
fly	flew	speak	spoke
get	got	spend	spent
give	gave	swim	swam
go	went	take	took
have	had	teach	taught /tɔːt/
hear	heard /hɜːd/	tell	told
know	knew	think	thought /θɔːt/
leave	left	understand	understood
make	made	wear	wore
meet	met	write	wrote

TIPS • The Past Simple of regular and irregular verbs is the same for *I*, *you*, *he*, *she*, *it*, *we* and *they*.
• The Past Simple of *be* is *was* or *were*.

9.2 Past Simple: negative 9B 4 p72

I	**didn't**	**stay**	in a hotel.	(**didn't** = did not)
He	**didn't**	**go**	swimming.	
She	**didn't**	**visit**	any other places.	
We	**didn't**	**go**	on holiday last year.	
They	**didn't**	**stay**	there for very long.	

9.3 Past Simple: questions and short answers 9B 8 p73

***WH-* QUESTIONS (?)**

Where	**did**	Heidi	**go**	on holiday?
Who	**did**	she	**stay**	with?
When	**did**	Charlie	**go**	to the beach?
How many photos	**did**	they	**take**?	

YES / NO QUESTIONS (?)	SHORT ANSWERS
Did he **go** swimming?	Yes, he **did**. No, he **didn't**.
Did they **visit** Turkey last year?	Yes, they **did**. No, they **didn't**.

TIPS • Past Simple questions are the same for *I*, *you*, *he*, *she*, *it*, *we* and *they*.
• We don't use *did* in questions with *was* and *were*.
• Notice the difference between negatives and questions in the Present Simple and Past Simple:

PRESENT SIMPLE	PAST SIMPLE
I **don't** live in a flat.	I **didn't** live in a flat.
He **doesn't** have a car.	He **didn't** have a car.
Where **do** you work?	Where **did** you work?
Where **does** she live?	Where **did** she live?

REAL WORLD

9.1 Buying train tickets 9C 3 p74

CUSTOMER	TICKET SELLER
A return to (London), please.	
	When do you want to come back?
Tomorrow evening.	
	OK. That's (£46.70), please. Here are your tickets.
Thanks. What time's the next train?	
	There's one at (10.23).
OK. Which platform?	
	Platform (three).
What time does it arrive in (London)?	
	At (11.56).
Thanks a lot. Bye.	

9.2 Asking about the weekend 9C 9 p75

Did you have a good weekend?
What did you do at the weekend?
Where did you go?
What did you do there?
Did you have a good time?
What did you see?
Did you enjoy it?

Language Summary 10

VOCABULARY

10.1 Future plans 10A 1 p78

start school or university / a new job

leave school or university / your job

do a (computer) course / an exam

move house / to another city or country

get engaged / married

look for a house or a flat / a (new) job


do an exam


move house


get married



look for a new job

10.2 Future time phrases 10A 7 p79

tonight
tomorrow morning
next week
next month
in June next year
in 2025

TIPS • We say *tonight* not ~~*this night*~~.
• We can say *tomorrow morning*, *tomorrow afternoon*, *tomorrow evening* and *tomorrow night*.
• We use *next* in these phrases: *next week*, *next weekend*, *next month*, *next year*.
• We use *in* with months (*in June*) and years (*in 2025*).
• We can also use *next* with months (*next June*) and days (*next Monday*).
• We use *on* with days (*on Monday*).

10.3 Phrases with *have*, *watch*, *go*, *go to* 10B 1 p80

have dinner with friends / coffee with friends / a party


have a party

watch TV / the news / sport on TV


watch the news

go shopping / swimming / running


go running

go to the cinema / the gym / a party


go to the gym

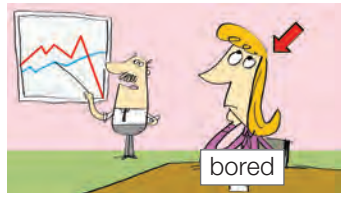
10.4 Adjectives (3): feelings 10C 1 p82

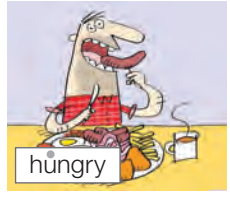
















TIP • We can say *I'**m** excited*, etc. or *I **feel** excited*, etc.

GRAMMAR

10.1 *be going to*: positive and negative

10A 3 p79

- We use ***be going to*** + ***verb*** to talk about **future plans**.

POSITIVE (+)

I	**'m** (= **am**)	**going to**	**do**	a computer course.
He / She	**'s** (= **is**)	**going to**	**leave**	his / her job.
We / You / They	**'re** (= **are**)	**going to**	**travel**	around the UK.

NEGATIVE (–)

I	**'m not**	**going to**	**start**	university this year.
He / She	**isn't**	**going to**	**stay**	here for very long.
We / You / They	**aren't**	**going to**	**live**	in São Paulo.

TIPS • With the verb *go* we usually say: *I'm going to the cinema*. not *I'm going to go to the cinema*. But both sentences are correct.

• We can also say: *He**'s not** going to … , She**'s not** going to … , We**'re not** going to … , You**'re not** going to …* and *They**'re not** going to … .*

10.2 *be going to*: questions and short answers

10B 4 p80

***WH-* QUESTIONS (?)**

What	**am**	I	**going to**	**do**	tomorrow?
Where	**are**	you / we / they	**going to**	**live**?	
When	**is**	he / she	**going to**	**move**	to South Africa?

When **is** Rosie **going to move** to South Africa?
What **is** her husband **going to do** there?
Where **are** her brothers **going to live**?
What **is** Andy **going to do** this evening?

***YES / NO* QUESTIONS (?)**	**SHORT ANSWERS**
Are you **going to see** a film?	Yes, I **am**. No, I**'m not**.
Is he / she **going to look for** a job?	Yes, he / she **is**. No, he / she **isn't**.
Are you **going to sell** your flat?	Yes, we **are**. No, we **aren't**.
Are they **going to have** a party?	Yes, they **are**. No, they **aren't**.

TIP • We can also say: *No, he**'s not**., No, she**'s not**., No, we**'re not**.* and *No, they**'re not**.*

REAL WORLD

10.1 Saying goodbye and good luck

10C 5 p83



Have a good	journey. holiday. day. weekend. birthday. time.



See you	in (September). in (two hours). this (evening). on (Monday). soon. later.



Good luck with your	new job. driving test. exam. new school. English test.

Phonemic Symbols

Vowel sounds

/ə/	/æ/	/ʊ/	/ɒ/	/ɪ/	/i/	/e/	/ʌ/
computer	bag man	book good	coffee hot	six thing	happy easy	bed any	much son
/ɜː/	/ɑː/	/uː/	/ɔː/	/iː/			
burger girl	father car	blue who	forty water	eat meet			
/eə/	/ɪə/	/ʊə/	/ɔɪ/	/aɪ/	/eɪ/	/əʊ/	/aʊ/
chair where	near we're	tourist	boy noisy	nine my	eight day	go know	out brown

Consonant sounds

/p/	/b/	/f/	/v/	/t/	/d/	/k/	/g/
park shop	be bike	five left	very live	time white	dog red	cold look	girl bag
/θ/	/ð/	/tʃ/	/dʒ/	/s/	/z/	/ʃ/	/ʒ/
three think	mother the	chips much	orange juice	suit city	zero days	shirt sugar	television
/m/	/n/	/ŋ/	/h/	/l/	/r/	/w/	/j/
me name	now train	sing think	here hello	leave plane	read price	waiter we	you yes

Answer Key

1D 7 p96

3 tables; 5 men; 2 women; 10 books; 3 pens; 8 pencils; 7 apples; 4 bags; 6 mobiles



2A 9 b p15

3 Leonardo DiCaprio isn't Italian. He's American.
4 Nissan isn't a Chinese company. It's a Japanese company.
5 ✓
6 The White House isn't in New York. It's in Washington.
7 Prince William isn't Russian. He's British.
8 ✓
9 Fiat isn't a French company. It's an Italian company.
10 ✓

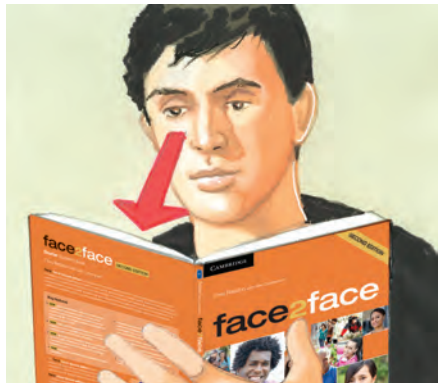
2D 10 p21

Amybeth 24; Richard 58; Lucinda 22
Adela 47; Dagmar 76
Joe 13; Alexander 16
Luke 35; Jessica 41; Maggie 71;
Salvador 3; Alec 5; Belle 2
Jean 80; Don 87; Chris 51

Classroom Instructions



Listen.



Read.



Write.



Look at the photo.



Work in pairs.



Work in groups.



Match.



Fill in the gaps.



Compare answers.



Listen and check.



Listen and practise.

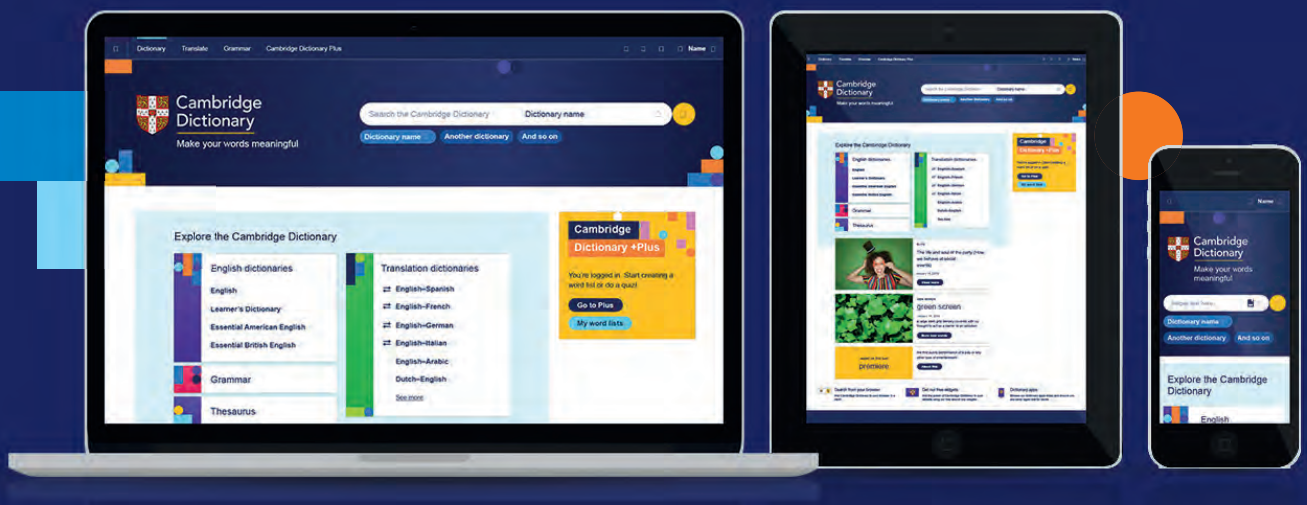


Ask and answer the questions.

Cambridge Dictionary

Make your words meaningful

Free, trustworthy, corpus-informed dictionaries, grammar reference and language learning resources.



Definitions, audio, translations and grammar

Written especially for learners of English, our definitions are clear and easy to understand. You'll also find American and British English audio pronunciations for each word, grammar advice, lots of example sentences, and translation dictionaries in more than 20 languages.

Optimised for smartphones

Perfect for looking up definitions, checking grammar and listening to pronunciations on the move. Cambridge Dictionary is as easy to use on a mobile phone as it is on a tablet or laptop.

Always up to date

Follow our blog to find out about new words and to get advice on grammar, vocabulary, phrasal verbs and idioms. Join us on Facebook, Twitter and Instagram for our Word of the Day and to become part of our community.

Personalised for you

Create and share personalised wordlists, quiz yourself and be the first to receive information about new features by signing up for Dictionary +Plus.

@cambridgewords
@cambridgewords
@cambridgedictionariesonline
Cambridge Dictionary

dictionary.cambridge.org

CAMBRIDGE
UNIVERSITY PRESS

University Printing House, Cambridge CB2 8BS, United Kingdom

One Liberty Plaza, 20th Floor, New York, NY 10006, USA

477 Williamstown Road, Port Melbourne, VIC 3207, Australia

314–321, 3rd Floor, Plot 3, Splendor Forum, Jasola District Centre, New Delhi – 110025, India

79 Anson Road, #06–04/06, Singapore 079906

Cambridge University Press is part of the University of Cambridge.

It furthers the University's mission by disseminating knowledge in the pursuit of education, learning and research at the highest international levels of excellence.

www.cambridge.org
Information on this title: www.cambridge.org/9781108733335

© Cambridge University Press 2012

This publication is in copyright. Subject to statutory exception and to the provisions of relevant collective licensing agreements, no reproduction of any part may take place without the written permission of Cambridge University Press.

First published 2012
This updated version published 2020

20 19 18 17 16 15 14 13 12 11 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Printed in Malaysia by Vivar Printing

A catalogue record for this publication is available from the British Library

ISBN 978-1-108-73333-5 Starter Student's Book
ISBN 978-1-108-77372-0 Starter Student's Book with Online Workbook
ISBN 978-1-107-61476-5 Starter Workbook with Key
ISBN 978-1-107-61477-2 Starter Workbook without Key
ISBN 978-1-107-65041-1 Starter Teacher's Book with DVD
ISBN 978-1-107-62168-8 Starter Class Audio CDs (3)
ISBN 978-1-107-61473-4 Starter Testmaker CD-ROM and Audio CD
ISBN 978-1-107-61475-8 Starter Presentation Plus DVD-ROM
ISBN 978-1-139-87007-8 Starter Online Workbook (e-commerce for Students)
ISBN 978-1-139-89323-7 Starter Online Workbook (Institutional Model - Student Access)
ISBN 978-1-139-86357-5 Starter Online Workbook (Teacher Access)

Cambridge University Press has no responsibility for the persistence or accuracy of URLs for external or third-party internet websites referred to in this publication, and does not guarantee that any content on such websites is, or will remain, accurate or appropriate. Information regarding prices, travel timetables, and other factual information given in this work is correct at the time of first printing but Cambridge University Press does not guarantee the accuracy of such information thereafter.

Acknowledgements

The authors would like to thank everyone at Cambridge University Press for all their dedication and hard work throughout the production of the Second edition of face2face, in particular Sarah Almy, Greg Sibley, Ros Henderson, Chris Williams, Peter Satchell, Laurence Koster, Hannah Dade, Claire Parson and Clare Sheridan. We would also like to thank Jessica Errington (freelance editor), Phaebus Media Group (video production) and Blooberry Design (book design).

Chris Redston would like to thank the following people for their help and support during the writing of this book: Gillie Cunningham, Mark Skipper, Jacqueline Mitchel, Will Ord, Chris and Dagmar Pickles, Stefan Flis, Anitha Modig, Joss Whedon, Olivia Dunham, Walter Bishop, Peter Bishop, Jean Barmer, his sisters Anne and Carol, and of course his dear father, Bill Redston. He would also like to extend particular thanks to Jessica Errington for being such a dedicated and committed editor, and for being such a pleasure to work with over the last two years. Finally, he would like to offer huge thanks to his wife, Adela Pickles, for all her love, support and garden pies, which helped keep him going throughout the writing of this book, and to Skipper the Bunny for late-night running around, bunnyflops and binkies. This book is dedicated to the memory of Mary Breen, a dear aunt, close friend and world-class raconteur.

The authors and publishers would like to thank the following teachers for the invaluable feedback which they provided:
Bradley Christmas, Susan Lewis, Annette Sievert (Australia), Guillermo Arredondo Villanueva, Rosalinda Heredia (Mexico).

The authors and publishers are grateful to the following contributors:
Blooberry Design Ltd: text design and page make-up Hilary Luckcock: picture research, commissioned photography
Gareth Boden: photography
Trevor Clifford: photography
Neil Matthews: photography
Leon Chambers: audio recordings
Phaebus Media Group: video recordings

The authors and publishers acknowledge the following sources of copyright material and are grateful for the permissions granted. While every effort has been made, it has not always been possible to identify the sources of all the material used, or to trace all copyright holders. If any omissions are brought to our notice, we will be happy to include the appropriate acknowledgements on reprinting.

The publishers are grateful to the following for permission to reproduce copyright photographs and material:

Key: l = left, c = centre, r = right, t = top, b = bottom

p7(TR): Thinkstock/istockphoto; p7(TC): Alamy/80 Eight Photography & Design; p9(photo A): Thinkstock/Hemera; p9(photo B): Alamy/Amana Images Inc; p9(photo C): Thinkstock/istockphoto; p9(photo D): Fotolia/Gamelover; p9(photo E): Masterfile/Kevin Dodge; p9(photo F): Shutterstock/Supri Suharjoto; p13(T): Getty Images/Adam Hester; p13(C): Alamy/GoGo Images Corporation; p13(B): Corbis/Keith Levit/Design Pictures; p14(T): Alamy/Alex Bramwell; p14(CT): Topfoto/Action Plus Sports Illustrated; p14(CB): Getty Images/AFP; p14(B): Alamy/z4BY36; p15(photo 1): Thinkstock/istockphoto; p15(photo 2): Rex Features/Startraks Photo; p15(photo 3): Getty Images/WireImage; p15(photo 4): © Nissan sourced from Alamy/Peter Probst; p15(photo 5): Shutterstock/WDG Photo; p15(photo 6): istockphoto/narvikk; p15(photo 7): Corbis/Weir Photos/Splash News; p15(photo 8): Getty Images 2012; p15(photo 9): © Fiat sourced from Alamy/Craig Yates; p15(photo 10): Shutterstock/zhu difeng; p17(photo 1): Corbis/Ian Lishman/Juice Images; p17(photo 2): Masterfile; p17(photo 3): Shutterstock/michael jung; p17(photo 4): istockphoto/eurobanks; p21(T): Gillie Cunningham, p21(UCL): Chris Redston; p21(UCR): Vicky Jay; p21(LC): Ashley Errington; p21(B): Adela Pickles; p22(couple): istockphoto/laflor; p22(Blue Mosque): Fotolia/oxanatravel; p23(couple): Getty/Image Source; p23(Egyptian Museum): © Museum of Cairo sourced from Masterfile/Robert Harding Images; p29(Zoe): Getty/Andrew Olney; p29(Ed): Alamy/Golden Pixels LLC; p29(Mel): Getty/Alex Mares-Manton; p29(Ben): Superstock/stockbroker; p30(female): istockphoto/Juanmonimo; p30(Merida): Alamy/Robert Rosenblum; p31(male): istockphoto/pink-cotton-candy; p31(Boston): Thinkstock/istockphoto; p33: Alamy/IS397; p.37(TR): Fotolia/Artur Golbert; p37(L): Shutterstock/Elena Elisseeva; p37(C): istockphoto/LUke1138; p37(B): Rex Features/KeystoneUSA-zuma; p43(photo10): Shutterstock/Sergey Peterman; p44(L): Alamy/ilovelmages/Fitness; p45: Shutterstock/Belushi; p46: Alamy/Paul Tavener; p47: Shutterstock/Pecold; p49(B/G): www.visitbath.co.uk; p50(photo A): www.footprints-tours.com; p50(photo B): © Kettle's Yard museum sourced from Alamy/Guy Somerset; p50(photo C): © The Fitzwilliam Museum sourced from Alamy/Jeremy Pembrey; p53(green heart): Thinkstock/istockphoto; p53(T): istockphoto/ftwitty; p53(C): Masterfile/Blend Images; p53(B): Masterfile; p55: Superstock/Stock Connection; p60(Google logo): www.google.com; p60(Amazon logo): www.amazon.com; p60(lastminute.com logo): www.lastminute.com; p60(itv logo): www.itv.com; p60(Cheapflights logo): www.cheapflights.com; p60(Blogger logo): © Blogger sourced from istockphoto/pearleye; p60 (ebay logo): www.ebay.com; p60(YouTube logo): YouTube; p60(Real Radio logo): GMG Radio; p60(Ticketmaster logo): www.ticketmaster.co.uk; p60(B) (Sunita): Fotolia/Intellistudies; p60(B) (Brian): istockphoto/omgimages; p60(B) (Millie): Thinkstock/istockphoto; p.62(BL): Masterfile/Norbert Schafer; p62(BR): Getty Images/Redferns/GAB Archive; p63(BL): Alamy/BlueMoon Stock; p63(BR): Thinkstock/istockphoto; p63(TL): PA/AP Photo/Russell McPhedran; p63(TR): Rex Features/Giuliano Bevilacqua; p64(B/G): Thinkstock/istockphoto; pp64/65: Alamy/david pearson; p64(bl): Alamy/Exotica.im10; p64(TL): Thinkstock/istockphoto; p68(tomato): Fotolia/rangizzz; p68(orange): Shutterstock/Maks Narodenko; p68(garlic): Fotolia/atoss; p68(B): Alamy/Jan Sochor; p68(C): Getty Images; p69(B): Masterfile/Mark Downey; p70(T): p70(C): HarperCollins Publishers Ltd ©2007 Antonia Bolingbroke-Kent/Joanna Huxton; Reuters/Chaiwat Subprasom; p71: PA Photos/AP Photo/Francois Mori; p72(T): istockphoto/kangah; p72(C): Thinkstock/Hemera; p72(B): Masterfile; p73(T): Thinkstock/Hemera; p73(C): Shutterstock/Tatiana Popova; p73(B): Alamy/Hercules Milas; p74(CL): Alamy/Alvey & Towers Picture Library; p74(CR): Alamy/Peter E Noyce; p75(photo A): Superstock/Travelshots; p75(photo B): Alamy/Justin Kase Ztwoz; p75(photo C): Alamy/Alan Copson City Pictures; p75(photo D): Shutterstock/Kamira; p76(kangaroo): Thinkstock/istockphoto; p76(Olympic rings): © International Olympic Committee sourced from Alamy/Victor Watts; p76(earth): Thinkstock/Hemera; p76(ET film): Rex Features/Universal/Everett; p76(moon): Alamy/Dennis Hallinan; p76(US Seal): © Federal Department of United States of America sourced from Alamy/Peter Probst; p76(Africa map): Alamy/Steve Stock; p76(Shakepeare's house): Alamy/Bill Bachmann; p78(T): Thinkstock/Wavebreak Media; p.78(C): Alamy/Purestock; p78(B): Thinkstock/istockphoto; p79: istockphoto/laflor; p88(TL couple): Getty Images/Maiwolf Photography; p88(TL Egyptian Museum): Masterfile/Robert Harding Images; p90(TL): Alamy/OJO Images Ltd; p90(R photo B): istockphoto/kanagah; p90(R photo C): Thinkstock/Hemera); p91(TL): Thinkstock/istockphoto; p91(CL): Alamy/80 Eight Photography & Design; p93(couple): istockphoto/laflor; p93(Blue Mosque): Fotolia/oxanatravel; p95(L): Alamy/OJO Images Ltd; p95(R photo B): istockphoto/kangah; p95(R photo C): Thinkstock/Hemera; p99: Getty Images/Steve Debenport; p115(LC): Thinkstock/istockphoto; p115(LB): Alamy/80 Eight Photography & Design; p122(orange juice): Shutterstock/Sergey Peterman; p130(ticket machine): Alamy/Alvey & Towers Picture Library; p130(platform): Alamy/ Peter E Noyce; Real World Headers: Alamy/GlowImages.

Front cover photos by: Glowimages.com (TL,TR,BC); Masterfile (C); Shutterstock/Diego Cervo (TCL), /wavebreakmedia (UC), /Luna Vandoorne (UCR), /leungchopan (BR), /Andresr (CL); Superstock/Image Source (BCR); Thinkstock/Jupiterimages (TC), /Vitalii Nesterchuck (TCR), /Bananastock (CR), /istockphoto (BCL), /Fuse (BL).

The following photographs were taken on commission by Trevor Clifford for Cambridge University Press: pp6/7, 9(T), 20, 24, 25, 26(photos1-6, 8-10), 28, 39(L, R), 40, 42/43(photos1-9), 46(Susan), 48, 50(TL), 52, 87(T), 115(T, UCR,BL,BR), 118(all except tuna salad), 122(all except orange juice), 124.

The following photographs were taken on commission by Gareth Boden for Cambridge University Press: pp10(both), 11, 12, 17(C), 26(photo7), 27, 42/43, 44(R), 51, 57, 61, 67, 74(train tickets), 75(T), 81, 83(both), 114(both), 118(tuna salad), 130(train tickets), 133(C, B).

The following photographs were taken on commission by Neil Matthews for Cambridge University Press: pp19, 34, 58, 74(L), 82, 130(customer), 133(T).

We are grateful to the following for their help with the commissioned photography: Amanda & Philip Green; The Old Barge, Hertford; Sam and Fraser Robb.

The publishers would like to thank the following illustrators: Fred Blunt, Mark Duffin, Jesse Eckel (New Division), F&L Productions, Martina Farrow (New Division), Graham Kennedy, Joanne Kerr (New Division), Domanic Li (Organisation), Chihiro Oda.

Corpus Development of this publication has made use of the Cambridge English Corpus (CEC). The CEC is a computer database of contemporary spoken and written English, which currently stands at over one billion words. It includes British English, American English and other varieties of English. It also includes the Cambridge Learner Corpus, developed in collaboration with Cambridge English Language Assessment. Cambridge University Press has built up the CEC to provide evidence about language use that helps to produce better language teaching materials.

English Profile This product is informed by the English Vocabulary Profile, built as part of English Profile, a collaborative programme designed to enhance the learning, teaching and assessment of English worldwide. Its main funding partners are Cambridge University Press and Cambridge English Language Assessment and its aim is to create a 'profile' for English linked to the Common European Framework of Reference for Languages (CEFR). English Profile outcomes, such as the English Vocabulary Profile, will provide detailed information about the language that learners can be expected to demonstrate at each CEFR level, offering a clear benchmark for learners' proficiency. For more information, please visit www.englishprofile.org

Windows is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and other countries.